

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations
and is not a part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

**As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,
please do not report the images to the
Image Problem Mailbox.**

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07K 7/06, A61K 38/08	A3	(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/22496 (43) International Publication Date: 28 May 1998 (28.05.98)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/EP97/06189 (22) International Filing Date: 7 November 1997 (07.11.97) (30) Priority Data: 9623908.2 18 November 1996 (18.11.96) GB (71) Applicant: F. HOFFMANN-LA ROCHE AG [CH/CH]; Grenzacherstrasse 124, CH-4070 Basle (CH). (72) Inventors: ATTWOOD, Michael, Richard; 22 Benslow Rise, Hitchin, Herts. SG4 9QX (GB). HURST, David, Nigel; 23 Cubitts Close, Welwyn, Herts. AL6 0DL (GB). JONES, Philip, Stephen; 58 Digswell Rise, Welwyn Garden City, Herts. AL8 7PW (GB). KAY, Paul, Brittain; 6 Mercia Road, Baldock, Herts. SG7 6RZ (GB). RAYNHAM, Tony, Michael; Braemar, High Road, Laindon, Basildon, Essex SS16 6BU (GB). WILSON, Francis, Xavier; 11 Great Conduit, Welwyn Garden City, Herts. AL7 2DH (GB). (74) Agent: MEZGER, Wolfgang; Grenzacherstrasse 124, CH-4070 Basle (CH).		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i> (88) Date of publication of the international search report: 16 July 1998 (16.07.98)
(54) Title: ANTIVIRAL PEPTIDE DERIVATIVES		
<div style="text-align: right;">(I)</div>		
(57) Abstract		
<p>The invention provides amino acid derivatives of formula (I) wherein E represents CHO or B(OH)₂; R¹ represents lower alkyl (optionally substituted by halo, cyano, lower alkylthio, aryl-lower alkylthio, aryl or heteroaryl), lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl; R² represents lower alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxy, carboxy, aryl, aminocarbonyl or lower cycloalkyl; and R³ represents hydrogen or lower alkyl; or R² and R³ together represent di- or trimethylene optionally substituted by hydroxy; R⁴ represents lower alkyl (optionally substituted by hydroxy, lower cycloalkyl, carboxy, aryl, lower alkylthio, cyano-lower alkylthio or aryl-lower alkylthio), lower alkenyl, aryl or lower cycloalkyl; R⁵ represents lower alkyl (optionally substituted by hydroxy, lower alkylthio, aryl, aryl-lower alkylthio or cyano-lower alkylthio) or lower cycloalkyl; R⁶ represents hydrogen or lower alkyl; R⁷ represents lower alkyl (optionally substituted by hydroxy, carboxy, aryl or lower cycloalkyl) or lower cycloalkyl; R⁸ represents lower alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxy, carboxy or aryl; and R⁹ represents lower alkylcarbonyl, carboxy-lower alkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, lower alkylsulphonyl, arylsulphonyl, lower alkoxy carbonyl or aryl-lower alkoxy carbonyl, and salts of acidic compounds of formula (I) with bases, which are viral proteinase inhibitors useful as antiviral agents, especially for the treatment or prophylaxis of infections caused by Hepatitis C, Hepatitis G and human GB viruses.</p>		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inter nal Application No

PCT/EP 97/06189

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 6 C07K7/06 A61K38/08

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 C07K A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	STEINKÜHLER E.A.: "Activity of purified Hepatitis C virus protease NS3 on peptide substrates" JOURNAL OF VIROLOGY., vol. 70, no. 10, October 1996, ICAN SOCIETY FOR MICROBIOLOGY US, pages 6694-6700, XP002064087 see the whole document ---	1-26
A	WO 92 22570 A (CHIRON CORP) 23 December 1992 see the whole document ---	1-26
A	WO 95 15766 A (HOUGHTEN PHARM INC) 15 June 1995 see the whole document ---	1-26
-/--		



Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.



Patent family members are listed in annex.

Special categories of cited documents:

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

6 May 1998

Date of mailing of the international search report

26/05/1998

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040. Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Groenendijk, M

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inter national Application No

PCT/EP 97/06189

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P, A	<p>WO 97 08304 A (ANGELETTI P IST RICHERCHE BIO ;STEINKUEHLER CHRISTIAN (IT); PESSI) 6 March 1997 see the whole document -----</p>	1-26

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/EP 97/06189

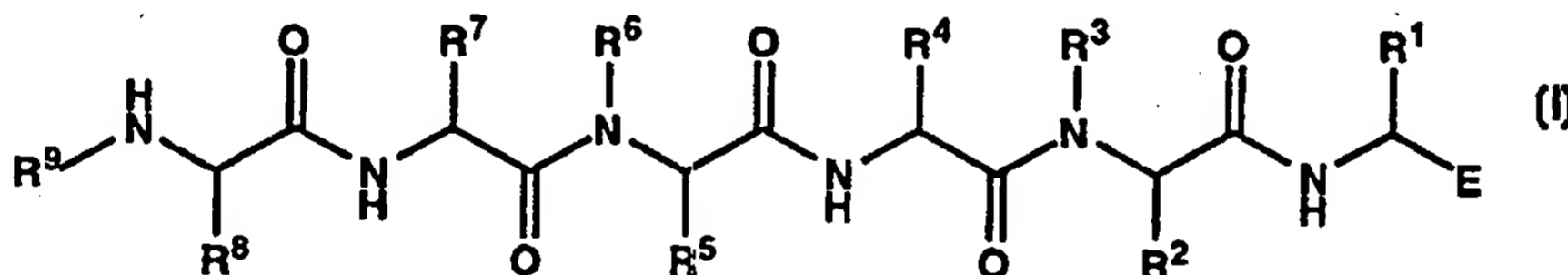
Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9222570 A	23-12-1992	AU 2251892 A EP 0668870 A JP 6510986 T	12-01-1993 30-08-1995 08-12-1994
WO 9515766 A	15-06-1995	US 5441936 A	15-08-1995
WO 9708304 A	06-03-1997	IT RM950573 A AU 6668696 A	24-02-1997 19-03-1997



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07K 7/06, A61K 38/08	A2	(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/22496 (43) International Publication Date: 28 May 1998 (28.05.98)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/EP97/06189 (22) International Filing Date: 7 November 1997 (07.11.97) (30) Priority Data: 9623908.2 18 November 1996 (18.11.96) GB (71) Applicant: F. HOFFMANN-LA ROCHE AG [CH/CH]; Grenzacherstrasse 124, CH-4070 Basle (CH). (72) Inventors: ATTWOOD, Michael, Richard; 22 Benslow Rise, Hitchin, Herts. SG4 9QX (GB). HURST, David, Nigel; 23 Cubitts Close, Welwyn, Herts. AL6 0DL (GB). JONES, Philip, Stephen; 58 Digswell Rise, Welwyn Garden City, Herts. AL8 7PW (GB). KAY, Paul, Brittain; 6 Mercia Road, Baldock, Herts. SG7 6RZ (GB). RAYNHAM, Tony, Michael; Braemar, High Road, Laindon, Basildon, Essex SS16 6BU (GB). WILSON, Francis, Xavier; 11 Great Conduit, Welwyn Garden City, Herts. AL7 2DH (GB). (74) Agent: MEZGER, Wolfgang; Grenzacherstrasse 124, CH-4070 Basle (CH).		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.

(54) Title: ANTIVIRAL PEPTIDE DERIVATIVES



(57) Abstract

The invention provides amino acid derivatives of formula (I) wherein E represents CHO or B(OH)₂; R¹ represents lower alkyl (optionally substituted by halo, cyano, lower alkylthio, aryl-lower alkylthio, aryl or heteroaryl), lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl; R² represents lower alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxy, carboxy, aryl, aminocarbonyl or lower cycloalkyl; and R³ represents hydrogen or lower alkyl; or R² and R³ together represent di- or trimethylene optionally substituted by hydroxy; R⁴ represents lower alkyl (optionally substituted by hydroxy, lower cycloalkyl, carboxy, aryl, lower alkylthio, cyano-lower alkylthio or aryl-lower alkylthio), lower alkenyl, aryl or lower cycloalkyl; R⁵ represents lower alkyl (optionally substituted by hydroxy, lower alkylthio, aryl, aryl-lower alkylthio or cyano-lower alkylthio) or lower cycloalkyl; R⁶ represents hydrogen or lower alkyl; R⁷ represents lower alkyl (optionally substituted by hydroxy, carboxy, aryl or lower cycloalkyl) or lower cycloalkyl; R⁸ represents lower alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxy, carboxy or aryl; and R⁹ represents lower alkylcarbonyl, carboxy-lower alkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, lower alkylsulphonyl, arylsulphonyl, lower alkoxy-carbonyl or aryl-lower alkoxy-carbonyl, and salts of acidic compounds of formula (I) with bases, which are viral proteinase inhibitors useful as antiviral agents, especially for the treatment or prophylaxis of infections caused by Hepatitis C, Hepatitis G and human GB viruses.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

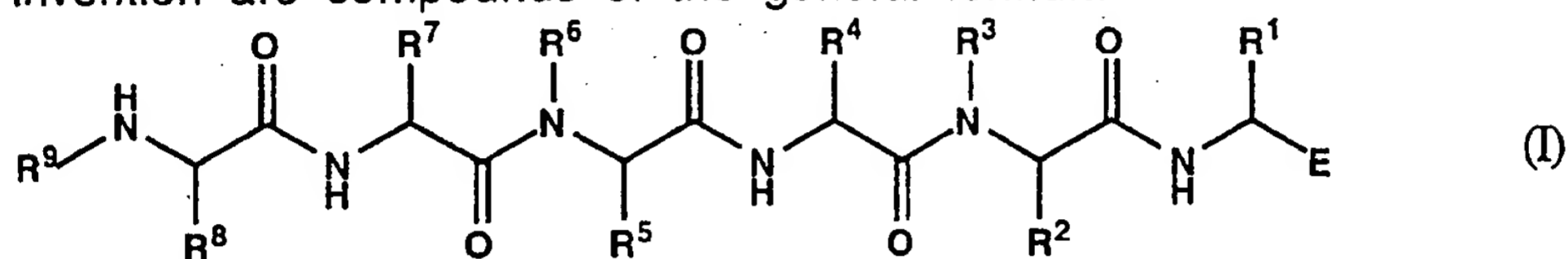
AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

5

ANTIVIRAL PEPTIDE DERIVATIVES

The present invention is concerned with amino acid derivatives and a process for their manufacture.

10 The amino acid derivatives provided by the present invention are compounds of the general formula



wherein

- E represents CHO or B(OH)₂;
- 15 R¹ represents lower alkyl, halo-lower alkyl, cyano-lower alkyl, lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl;
- 20 R² represents lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aminocarbonyl-lower alkyl or lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl; and
- R³ represents hydrogen or lower alkyl; or
- R² and R³ together represent di- or trimethylene optionally substituted by hydroxy;
- 25 R⁴ represents lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, cyano-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, aryl or lower cycloalkyl;
- 30 R⁵ represents lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, cyano-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl or lower cycloalkyl;
- R⁶ represents hydrogen or lower alkyl;
- 35 R⁷ represent lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, lower cycloalkyl-lower

- alkyl or lower cycloalkyl;
- R⁸ represents lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl or aryl-lower alkyl; and
- R⁹ represents lower alkylcarbonyl, carboxy-lower alkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, lower alkylsulphonyl, arylsulphonyl, lower alkoxy carbonyl or aryl-lower alkoxy carbonyl;

and salts of acidic compounds of formula I with bases.

- 10 The compounds of formula I and their aforementioned salts inhibit proteinases of viral origin and are useful in the treatment of viral infections, particularly viral infections caused by Hepatitis C, Hepatitis G and the human GB viruses.
- 15 As used in this specification, the term "lower alkyl", alone or in combination, denotes a straight-chain or branched chain alkyl group preferably containing 1-7, especially 1-4, carbon atoms, e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, isobutyl, sec.butyl, tert.butyl, n-pentyl, neopentyl and the like. "The terms
- 20 "lower alkenyl" and "lower alkynyl" denote alkenyl groups preferably containing 2-7 carbon atoms, e.g. vinyl, allyl, n-propenyl, n-butenyl, and the like, and, respectively, alkynyl groups preferably containing 2-7 carbon atoms, e.g. propargyl and the like. The term "lower cycloalkyl" denotes a cycloalkyl group
- 25 preferably containing 3-7 carbon atoms, e.g. cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl and the like. The lower alkoxy part of a "lower alkoxy carbonyl" group is preferably a lower alkyl ether group in which the lower alkyl moiety has the aforementioned significance. The term "aryl" denotes a monocyclic or polycyclic
- 30 aromatic hydrocarbon group, e.g. phenyl, naphthyl or the like which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from e.g. lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, nitro, halo, halo-lower alkyl, hydroxy, acetamido and the like. The term
- 35 "heteroaryl" denotes a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group which contains N, O and/or S as the hetero atom(s) and which is optionally benz-fused and/or substituted in the same manner as the aryl group defined above. Examples of heteroaryl groups are furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, benzofuranyl,

benzothienyl, quinolyl, isoquinolyl and the like.

The compounds of formula I contain at least six asymmetric carbon atoms and can therefore exist in the form of optically pure diastereoisomers, mixtures of diastereoisomers, diastereoisomeric racemates or mixtures of diastereoisomeric racemates. The present invention includes within its scope all of these possible forms.

One class of preferred compounds of formula I comprises those in which R¹ represents lower alkyl, halo-lower alkyl, lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, hetero-aryl-lower alkyl, lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl. Fluoro-lower alkyl is the preferred halo-lower alkyl group. Preferred hetero-aryl-lower alkyl groups are thienyl-lower alkyl and furyl-lower alkyl. Preferably, R² represents lower alkyl, lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl or aryl-lower alkyl and R³ represents hydrogen or R² and R³ together represent trimethylene optionally substituted by hydroxy. R⁴ preferably represents lower alkyl, lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl or lower cycloalkyl, R⁵ preferably represents aryl-lower alkyl or lower cycloalkyl, R⁶ preferably represents hydrogen, R⁷ preferably represents lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl or hydroxy-lower alkyl, R⁸ preferably represents hydroxy-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl or aryl-lower alkyl and R⁹ preferably represents lower alkylcarbonyl or carboxy-lower alkylcarbonyl.

Examples of these preferred compounds in which E represents CHO are:

30

2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-Carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]butyraldehyde;

2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4-difluorovaleraldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-

leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(methylthio)propionaldehyde;

5 2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(butylthio)propionaldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-pentenaldehyde;

10 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-pentynal;

2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-hexynal;

3-(benzylthio)-2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propionaldehyde;

20 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(2-thienyl)propionaldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(3-thienyl)propionaldehyde;

25 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L-seryl-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

30 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]hexanal;

35 (Z)-2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-hexenal;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L-

α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-

5 leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-5-methylhexanal;

2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-5-hexenal;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-norleucyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde; and

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(4-acetamidobenzoyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

25 and examples of these preferred compounds in which E represents B(OH)₂ are:

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-Carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]butylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-

valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid;

5 1(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]pentylboronic acid;

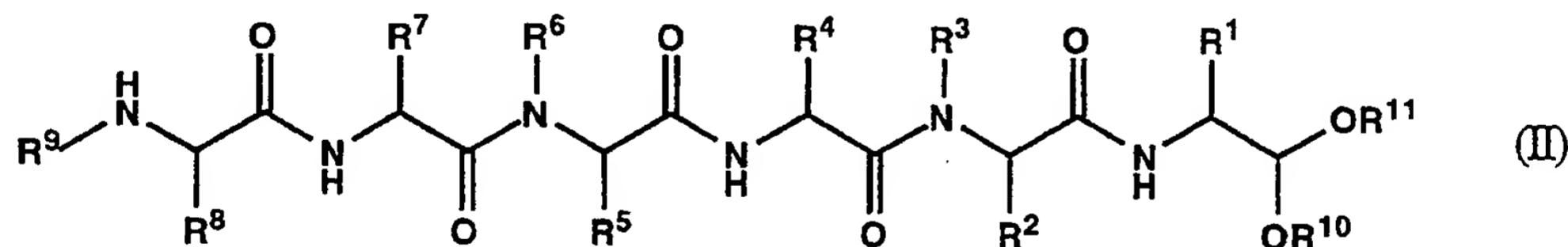
1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid; and

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl-L-leucyl]-amino]propylboronic acid.

According to the process provided by the present invention, the compounds of formula I hereinbefore and salts of acidic compounds of formula I with bases are manufactured by

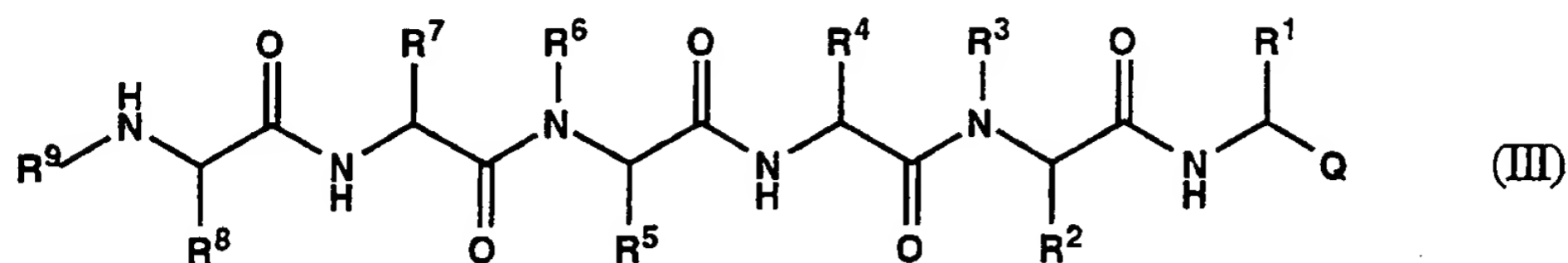
a) for the manufacture of a compound of formula I in which E represents CHO, deacetalizing and, where required, deprotecting an acetal of the general formula



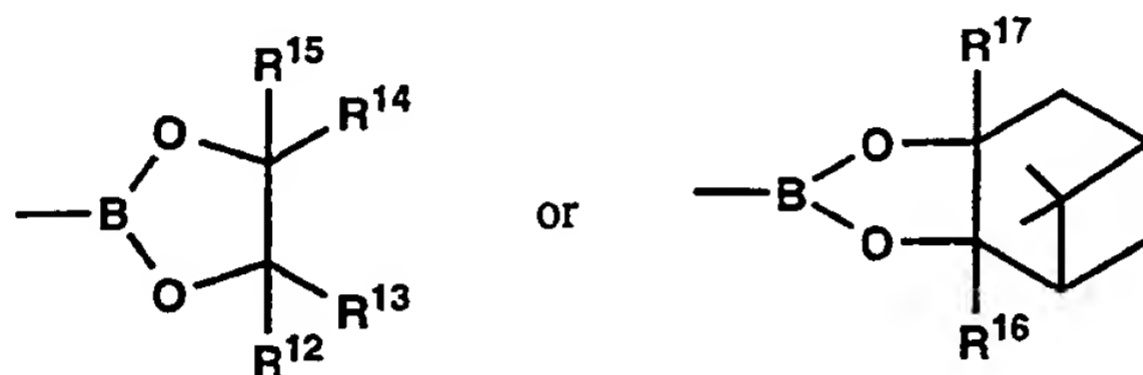
wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹ have the significance given earlier, provided that any carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl group(s) present is/are in protected form, and R¹⁰ and R¹¹ each represent lower alkyl, or

b) for the manufacture of a compound of formula I in which E represents B(OH)₂, ring opening and, where required, deprotecting

a substituted dioxaborolane of the general formula



- 5 wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹ have the significance given earlier, provided that any carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl group(s) present may be in protected form, and Q represents a group of the formula



10

(a)

(b)

wherein R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ each represent hydrogen or lower alkyl and R¹⁶ and R¹⁷ each represent hydrogen or lower alkyl,

15 and

c) if desired, converting an acidic compound of formula I obtained into a salt with a base.

- 20 Protected carboxy, hydroxy and aminocarbonyl groups which are present in the acetal starting materials of formula II and which may be present in the substituted dioxaborolane starting materials of formula III are carboxy, hydroxy and, respectively, aminocarbonyl groups protected with a conventional protecting group known from peptide chemistry. In particular, R², R⁴, R⁷, R⁸ and/or R⁹ can preferably represent tert-butoxycarbonyl-lower alkyl as protected carboxy, R², R⁴, R⁵, R⁷ R⁸ and/or R⁹ can preferably represent lower alkyl O-tert.butyl ether as protected hydroxy and R² can preferably represent tritylamino-
- 25 lower alkyl as protected aminocarbonyl-lower alkyl.
- 30

The deacetalization of an acetal of formula II, preferably one in which R¹⁰ and R¹¹ each represent methyl, according to embodiment a) of the process according to the invention can be carried out in a manner known per se. It is conveniently effected using trifluoroacetic acid or an equivalent strong acid in the presence of an inert organic solvent such as a halogenated aliphatic hydrocarbon, e.g. dichloromethane, and in the presence of water. Suitably, the deacetalization is carried out at about room temperature. When protected carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl groups are present in the acetal starting material, these are converted into free carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl groups under the conditions of the deacetalization.

According to a variant of embodiment a) of the process according to the invention, an acetal starting material of formula II is bonded to a solid phase peptide synthesis resin. In this case, cleavage from the resin takes place under the conditions used for the deacetalization.

The ring opening of a substituted dioxaborolane of formula III in which Q represents a group of formula (a), preferably one in which R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ each represent methyl, according to embodiment b) of the process according to the invention can also be carried out in a manner known per se. Conveniently, the ring opening is carried out using trifluoroacetic acid or an equivalent strong acid in an inert organic solvent, e.g. a halogenated aliphatic hydrocarbon such as dichloromethane, and optionally in the presence of water. Suitably, the ring opening is carried out at about room temperature. When protected carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl groups are present in the substituted dioxaborolane starting material, these are converted into free carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl groups under the conditions of the ring opening.

The ring opening of a substituted dioxaborolane of formula III in which Q represents a group of formula (b), especially one in which one of R¹⁶ and R¹⁷ represents hydrogen and the other

represents methyl, according to embodiment b) of the process in accordance with the invention can be carried out in a conventional manner. Conveniently, the ring opening is carried out using a periodate, especially an alkali metal periodate, especially sodium
 5 periodate in a buffered aqueous-organic medium, suitably at about room temperature. Advantageously, the medium consists of a mixture of an inert water-miscible organic solvent, e.g. acetone, and aqueous ammonium acetate. Any protected carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl group(s) present in the substituted
 10 dioxaborolane starting material are deprotected in a manner known per se, e.g. by treatment with trifluoroacetic acid, prior to the ring opening.

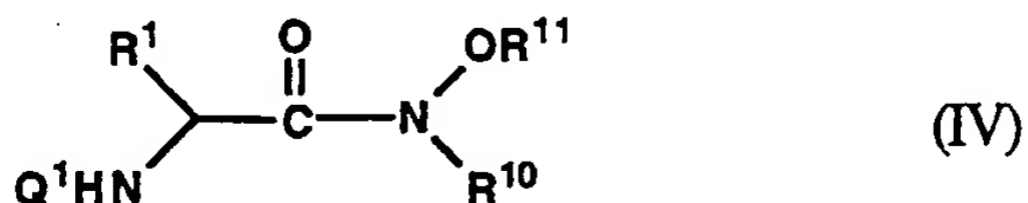
According to a variant of embodiment b) of the process
 15 according to the invention, a substituted dioxaborolane of formula III in which Q represents a group of formula (a) is bonded to a solid phase synthesis resin. The bonding is typically through an alkyl group R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴ or R¹⁵ linked to the resin via an amide bridge. Cleavage from the resin takes place under the conditions
 20 used in embodiment b) of the process.

In accordance with embodiment c) of the process acidic compounds of formula I can be converted into salts with bases, e.g. alkali metal salts such as sodium or potassium salts, alkaline
 25 earth metal salts such as calcium or magnesium salts, salts with organic bases, e.g. salts with amines such as N-ethylpiperidine, procaine or dibenzylamine, or salts with basic amino acids such as salts with arginine or lysine. The formation and isolation of such salts can be carried out according to methods known per se.

30

The acetal starting materials of formula II are novel and also form an object of the present invention. They can be prepared, for example, by firstly reducing a hydroxamate of the general formula

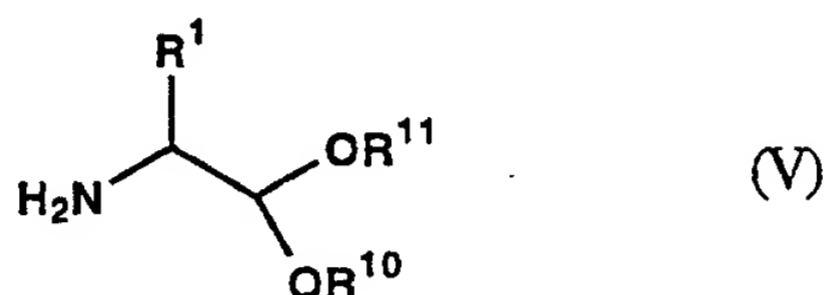
35



wherein R^1 , R^{10} and R^{11} have the significance given earlier and Q^1 represents an amino protecting group, e.g.

tert.butoxycarbonyl,

with an alkali metal aluminium hydride, e.g. lithium aluminium
5 hydride, treating the product with methanolic hydrochloric acid
to give the hydrochloride salt of a compound of the general
formula



10

wherein R^1 , R^{10} and R^{11} have the significance given earlier,
and subsequently either subjecting this to sequential coupling
with respective amino acids or subjecting a fragment obtained
during such a sequential coupling to further coupling with a
15 peptide derivative of appropriate length. Alternatively, a
compound of formula V can be coupled with a suitable penta-
peptide.

The aforementioned coupling reactions can be carried out in
20 a manner known per se in peptide chemistry, conveniently using
the respective amino acid or di, tri-, tetra- or pentapeptide
appropriately protected as described above and also at any amino
group present by Fmoc [(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl] in the
presence of hydroxybenzotriazole, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-
25 ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and N-methylmorpholine and in
an inert organic solvent, e.g. a halogenated hydrocarbon such as
dichloromethane.

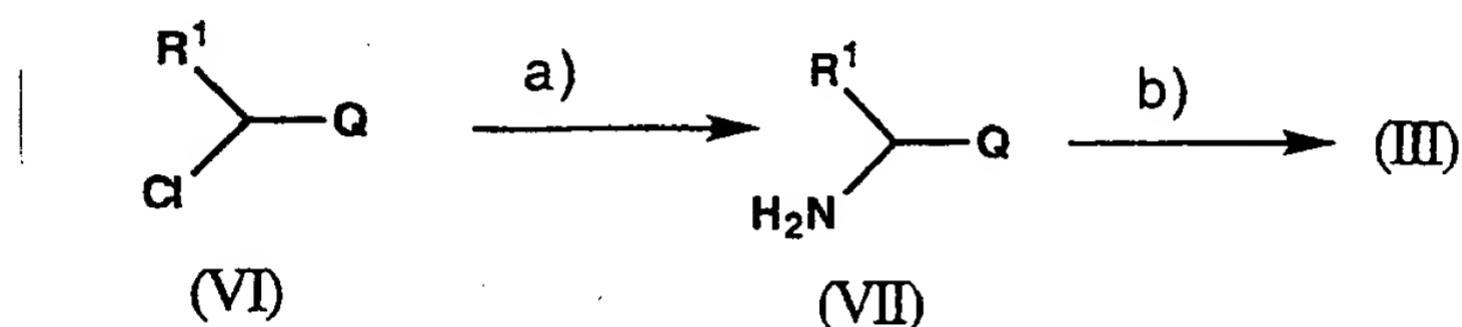
The hydroxamates of formula IV required for the
30 preparation of the acetal starting materials of formula II are
known compounds or analogues of known compounds which can be
prepared in an analogous manner to the known compounds.

The acetal starting materials of formula II can also be
35 synthesised from a compound of formula V on a solid phase
peptide synthesis resin. This procedure is known and is described

in detail in Handbook from Fourth International Symposium on Solid Phase Synthesis and Combinatorial Chemical Libraries, Edinburgh, 1995.

5 The substituted dioxaborolanes of formula III used as starting materials in embodiment b) of the process according to the invention are novel and form a further object of the present invention. They can be prepared, for example, as illustrated in Scheme A hereinafter in which R¹ and Q have the significance
10 given earlier:

Scheme A



Having regard to Scheme A, in step a) a compound of formula
15 VI is reacted with an alkali metal bis[tri(lower alkyl)silyl]amide,
e.g. lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide, in an inert organic solvent
such as an ether, e.g. diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran, and then
treated with a strong acid, e.g. trifluoroacetic acid, to give a
compound of formula VII.

20 In step b) a compound of formula VII is converted into a compound of formula III either by coupling with a pentapeptide, by sequential coupling with respective amino acids or by coupling a fragment obtained during the sequential coupling with a peptide
25 derivative of the desired length, with the amino acid or peptide used being appropriately protected as described above and also at any amino group present by Fmoc. These coupling reactions can be carried out in a manner known per se in peptide chemistry, for example using the amino acid or peptide in the form of a mixed
30 anhydride formed e.g. with a lower alkyl haloformate such as isobutyl chloroformate and carrying out the coupling in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. a tertiary organic base such as N-methylmorpholine.

Substituted dioxaborolanes of formula III obtained by the foregoing coupling and which carry a protecting group on the substituent at R², R⁴, R⁵, R⁷, R⁸ and/or R⁹ can be selectively
5 deprotected in a conventional manner, e.g. using trifluoroacetic acid, to the corresponding compounds which carry a free carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl group on the respective substituent, while retaining the protected boronic acid moiety denoted by Q. These selectively deprotected compounds are also
10 active as inhibitors of proteinases of viral origin and can be used in the treatment of viral infections in the same manner as the compounds of formula I

Compounds of formula VI can be prepared, for example, from
15 a compound of the general formula

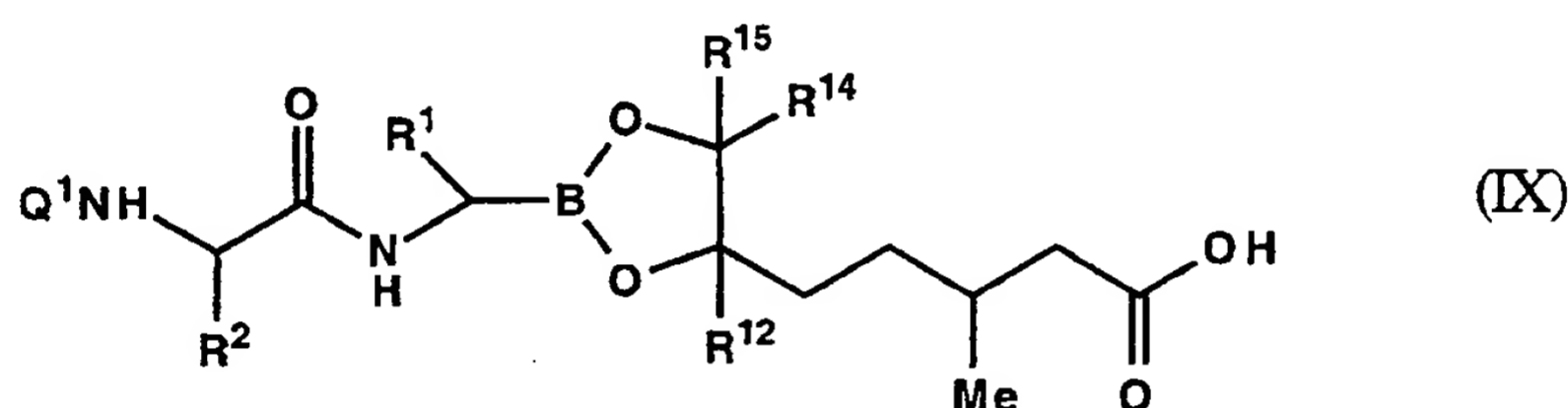


wherein Q has the significance given earlier,
20 which is a known compound or an analogue of a known compound, by reaction with a compound of the formula R^{1a}-MgHal, wherein R^{1a} has the same significance as R¹ hereinbefore, but contains one carbon atom less and Hal represents halogen, preferably bromine. The reaction is carried out under the conventional
25 conditions of a Grignard reaction, for example in an inert organic solvent such as an ether, e.g. diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran. When Q represents a group of formula (b), the reaction is carried out in the presence of zinc chloride.

30 A compound of formula VI in which R¹ represents bromo-lower alkyl or fluoro-lower alkyl and Q represents a group of formula (a) can be prepared, for example, by hydroborating a bromo- or fluoro-lower alkene, e.g. 3-bromopropene or 3-fluoropropene, reacting the hydroboration product with a diol of
35 the formula R¹²R¹³C(OH)-C(OH)R¹⁴R¹⁵, wherein R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ have the significance given earlier, e.g. 2,3-dimethyl-2,3-butanediol, and reacting the resulting 2-(bromo- or fluoro-lower alkyl)-1,3,2-dioxaborolane with dichloromethane in the presence

of lithium diisopropylamine. The hydroboration can be carried out in a conventional manner, for example using phenylboronic acid at an elevated temperature, e.g. about 100°C, in the absence of a solvent or using borane-dimethyl sulphide complex in the presence of cyclohexene in an inert organic solvent, e.g. dimethoxyethane, at about 0°C followed by treatment with trimethylamine N-oxide.

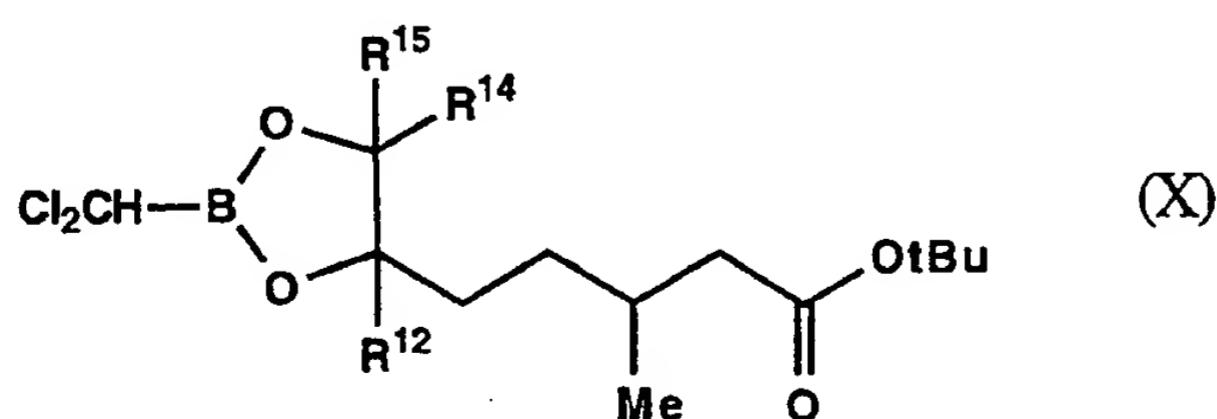
A substituted dioxaborolane of formula III in which Q represents a group of formula (a) can also be synthesised on a solid phase peptide synthesis resin. For example, a 4-methylbenzhydryl resin can be reacted with a dioxaborolanyl-valeric acid of the general formula



wherein R¹, R², R¹², R¹⁴, R¹⁵ and Q¹ have the significance given earlier,

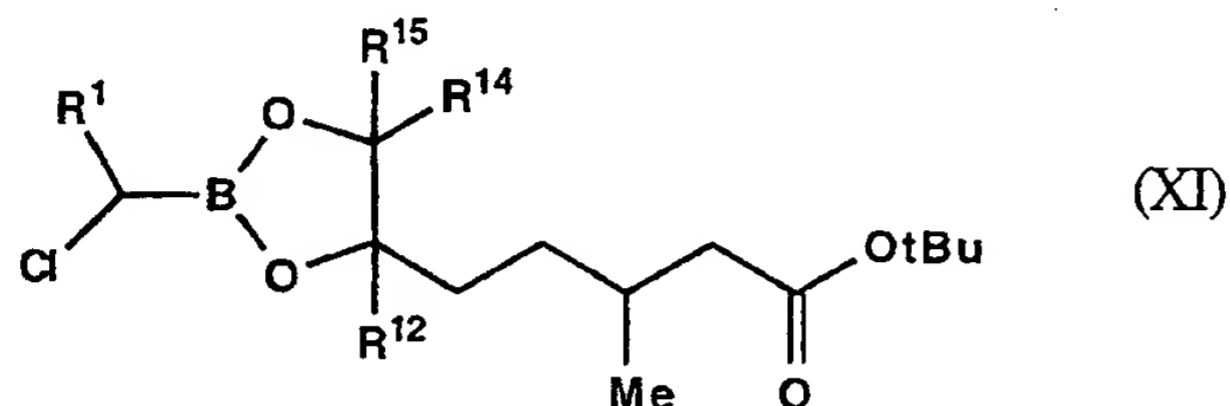
and the product can be converted into the required resin-bonded starting material by successive deprotection and coupling with a protected amino acid.

Compounds of formula IX can be conveniently prepared by reacting a tert-butyl 6,7-dihydroxy-3,6,7-tri(lower alkyl)-6-octenoate with dichloromethyl diisopropoxyborane, condensing the resulting compound of the general formula

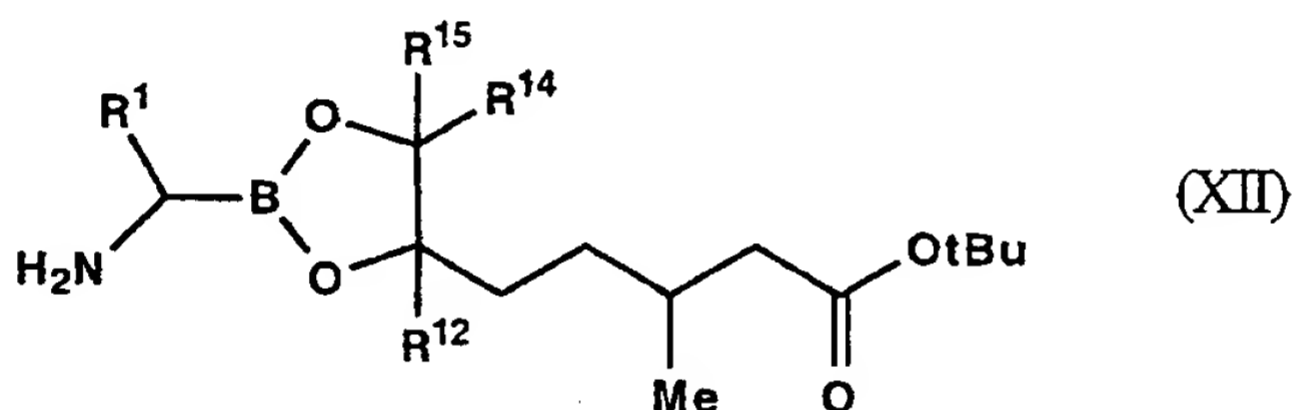


wherein R¹², R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ have the significance given

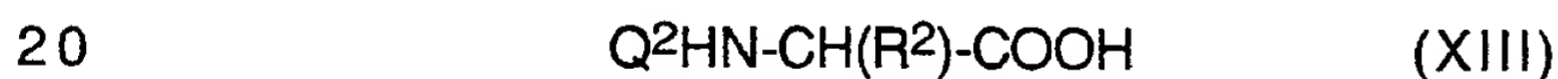
earlier,
 with a compound of formula R^1MgHal , wherein R^1 has the significance given earlier and Hal represents halogen, preferably bromine, under the conditions of a Grignard reaction, reacting the
 5 resulting compound of the general formula



wherein R^1 , R^{12} , R^{14} and R^{15} have the significance given
 10 earlier,
 with an alkali metal bis[tri(lower alkyl)silyl]amide, condensing
 the resulting compound of the general formula

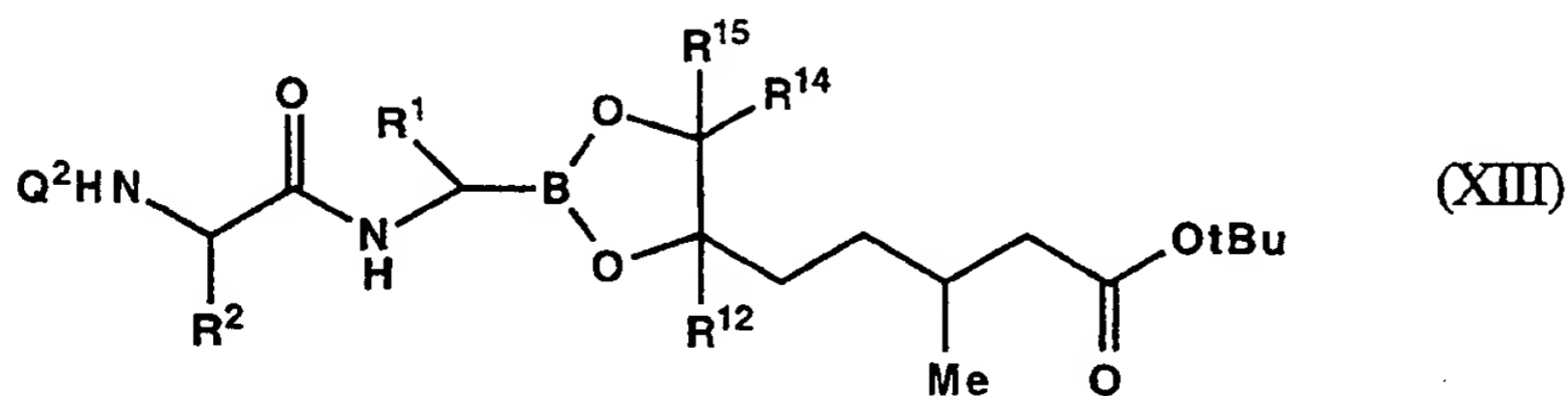


wherein R^1 , R^{12} , R^{14} and R^{15} have the significance given
 15 earlier,
 with a protected amino acid of the general formula



wherein R^2 has the significance given earlier and Q^2
 represents Fmoc,
 and de-esterifying the resulting compound of the general formula

25



wherein R¹, R², R¹², R¹⁴, R¹⁵ and Q² have the significance given earlier.

5 As mentioned earlier, the compounds of formula I and salts of acidic compounds of formula I with bases are inhibitors of proteases of viral origin. The activity against one such protease, namely HCV protease, can be demonstrated using the following assay:

10

Construction of plasmid for the expression of MBP-NS3"Gly₁₂-NS4A enzyme in E. coli

The nucleotide sequence of this expression plasmid is given in Figure 1 appended hereto and the amino acid sequence of its expression product is given in Figure 2 appended hereto. It is based on the pMAL[®]-c2 vector supplied by New England Biolabs, Inc. (32 Tozer Rd., Beverly, MA, USA). The principle of the construction was to create an in-frame fusion of the maltose binding protein (MBP) gene supplied by the pMAL-c2 vector, and sequences of the HCV genome necessary for NS3 proteinase activity. These HCV sequences were inserted between the EcoRI and HindIII sites of the pMAL-c2 polylinker (positions 2695 and 3556 respectively of the sequence given in Figure 1).

25

HCV sequences were derived from plasmids pDS 3348-4045 and pBFK 3348-6062, described by Bartenschlager et al, 1993 (Journal of Virology, 67, 3835-3844). Regions encompassing the NS3 proteinase domain (amino acids 1007-1219) and the NS4A domain (amino acids 1658-1711) were isolated and inserted into the pMAL-c2 vector using standard recombinant DNA techniques, including the PCR amplification of required sequences. Between the NS3 and NS4A domains, a linker region was constructed using synthetic oligonucleotides (positions 3343-3390; amino acids 606-621). The resulting plasmid was used to transform E. coli (strain MC1061) cells and expression of the MBP-NS3"Gly₁₂-NS4A enzyme was induced as described below.

35

Protein expression and purification

E. coli (strain MC1061) cells transformed with the foregoing plasmid were grown in Luria broth containing ampicillin
5 (100 µg/ml) at 37°C. The cells were grown until an optical density of 0.5 at 600 nm had been reached and enzyme expression was then induced by adding 1 mM isopropylthiogalactoside and incubating at 37°C for a further 3 hours. The cells were harvested by centrifugation and stored at -80°C.

10

A pellet from 4 l of bacterial culture was resuspended in E.coli lysis buffer (20 mM Tris HCl, pH 7.5, containing 150 mM NaCl, 1mM EDTA and 10 mM dithiothreitol) and cell lysis was achieved by two passages through a French Pressure cell. The
15 clear supernatant obtained by centrifugation (18000 g, 30 minutes) was then applied to an amylose resin column (4 x 1 cm) (New England Biolabs) which had been equilibrated with ice-cold 50 mM Tris HCl, pH 8.5, containing 200 mM NaCl, 1 mM dithiothreitol and 5% glycerol. The column was washed
20 thoroughly with the equilibration buffer and bound protein was eluted using the equilibration buffer containing 10 mM maltose. Fractions of 1 ml were collected, with fractions containing the enzyme being pooled and stored at -80°C. Enzyme concentration was assayed by the method of M.B. Bradford, Analytical
25 Biochemistry, 1976, vol. 72, p.248.

Assay

Compounds of formula I (routinely prepared as stock
30 solutions in DMSO) were assayed for their ability to inhibit the cleavage of a quenched fluorescence substrate [NS4A/B.F peptide (N-[4-[4-(dimethylamino)phenylazo]benzoyl]-L-α-aspartyl-L-α-glutamyl-L-methionyl-L-α-glutamyl-L-α-glutamyl-L-cysteinyl-L-alanyl-L-seryl-L-histidyl-N5-[2-(5-sulpho-1-naphthylamino)-
35 ethyl]-L-glutaminamide); Wilkinson et al, Society for General Microbiology Meeting, University of Warwick, England, 28 March 1996] based on the NS4A/4B cleavage site by enzyme MBP-NS3''Gly₁₂-NS4A in microtitre plates as follows:

The enzyme (1 μ g) was added to 200 μ l final volume of a mixture containing 50 mM Tris HCl, pH 8.5, with 1mM dithiothreitol, 0.1% Triton X-100 and the test compound of formula I. The resulting mixture was incubated at room temperature for 15 minutes prior to starting the reaction by the addition of NS4A/B.F peptide to a final concentration of 10 μ M. The progress of the reaction was evaluated with a Perseptive Biosystems Cytofluor II using an excitation wavelength of 360 nm and an emission wavelength of 530 nm. After incubation for a further 10 minutes, the reduction in fluorescence in the presence of inhibitor was measured. This was plotted against inhibitor concentration and the inhibitor concentration which caused 50% reduction (IC_{50}) was calculated by manual graphical analysis or by the use of the Perseptive Biosystems Cytocalc curve fitting program.

The results obtained in the foregoing assay with representative compounds of formula I are compiled in the following Table:

Table

Compound of formula I	HCV proteinase IC_{50} (μ mol/l)
A	0.09
B	0.07
C	0.064
D	0.034
E	0.038
F	0.16

Compounds:

25

A = 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-pentenaldehyde.

30

B = 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4-difluorovaleraldehyde.

- C = 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde.
- 5 D = 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid.
- E = 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid.
- 10 F = 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]butylboronic acid.

The compounds of formula I' and salts of acidic compounds
15 of formula I with bases can be used as medicaments, e.g. in the form of pharmaceutical preparations. The pharmaceutical preparations can be administered enterally such as orally in the form of tablets, coated tablets, dragées, hard and soft gelatine capsules, solutions, emulsions or suspensions, nasally, e.g. in the
20 form of nasal sprays, or rectally, e.g. in the form of suppositories. They may, however, also be administered parenterally, e.g. in the form of injection solutions.

The compounds of formula I and their aforementioned salts
25 can be processed with pharmaceutically inert, organic or inorganic carriers for the production of pharmaceutical preparations. Lactose, corn starch or derivatives thereof, talc, stearic acid or its salts and the like can be used, for example, as such carriers for tablets, coated tablets, dragées and hard
30 gelatine capsules. Suitable carriers for soft gelatine capsules are, for example, vegetable oils, waxes, fats, semi-solid and liquid polyols and the like; depending on the nature of the active ingredient no carriers are, however, usually required in the case of soft gelatine capsules. Suitable carriers for the production of
35 solutions and syrups are, for example, water, polyols, sucrose, invert sugar, glucose and the like. Suitable carriers for suppositories are, for example, natural or hardened oils, waxes, fats, semi-liquid or liquid polyols and the like.

The pharmaceutical preparations can also contain preservatives, solubilizers, stabilizers, wetting agents, emulsifiers, sweeteners, colorants, flavorants, salts for varying the osmotic pressure, buffers, masking agents or antioxidants. They can also contain still other therapeutically valuable substances.

Medicaments containing a compound of formula I or a salt of an acidic compound of formula I with a base in association with a compatible pharmaceutical carrier are also an object of the present invention, as is a process for the production of such medicaments which comprises bringing one or more of these compounds or salts and, if desired, one or more other therapeutically valuable substances into a galenical administration form together with a compatible pharmaceutical carrier.

As mentioned earlier, the compounds of formula I and salts of acidic compounds of formula I with bases can be used in accordance with the invention as therapeutically active substances, especially as antiviral agents. The dosage can vary within wide limits and will, of course, be fitted to the individual requirements in each particular case. In general, in the case of administration to adults a convenient daily dosage should be about 3 mg to about 3 g, preferably about 10 mg to 1 g. The daily dosage may be administered as a single dose or in divided doses and, in addition, the upper dosage limit referred to earlier may be exceeded when this is found to be indicated.

Finally, the use of compounds of formula I and salts of acidic compounds of formula I with bases for the production of medicaments, especially of antiviral medicaments, is also an object of the invention.

The invention is illustrated by the following Examples. In the Examples SSA denotes the solvent system 0.1% TFA in water and SSB denotes the solvent system 0.1% TFA in 70% acetonitrile 30% water.

Example 1

0.1 g (0.1 mmol) of N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
5 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 3 ml of dichloromethane, 3 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 90 mg of water and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solution was diluted with 20 ml of toluene and
10 the solvent was removed by evaporation. The resulting white solid was triturated with diethyl ether and filtered off. The solid was purified by RP-HPLC on a C18 Dynamax column (pore size 300Å; column size 21.4 mm x 50 mm). The elution gradient comprised 90% SSA 10% SSB to 95% SSB 5% SSA over
15 8.5 minutes. After lyophilization overnight there were obtained 25 mg of 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]butyraldehyde as a white foam. MS: m/e 819.5 [M+H]⁺.

20

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) A solution of 25 g (63.6 mmol) of L-leucine benzyl ester p-toluenesulphonic acid salt, 14.69 g (63.6 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-methyl-L-valine, 9.73 g (63.6 mmol) of
25 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 7.32 g (63.3 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine and 12.21 g (63.6 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 500 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature overnight. The
30 solution was washed with water, sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation gave 21.65 g of N-[(N-tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester as an oil which was used in the next
35 step without further purification. MS: m/e 435 [M+H]⁺.

ii) A solution of 9.74 g (22.4 mmol) of N-[(N-tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in 25 ml of

trifluoroacetic acid and 50 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was removed by evaporation and 50 ml of toluene were added. Evaporation gave N-(3-methyl-L-valyl)-L-leucine benzyl ester as an oil which was
5 used in the next step without further purification.

iii) A solution of the foregoing oil, 9 g (22.4 mmol) of N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-2-methyl-L-phenylalanine, 3.43 g (22.4 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 3.87 g (33.66 mmol) of
10 N-ethylmorpholine and 4.31 g (22.4 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 100 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solution was washed with water, sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium chloride
15 solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation and chromatography on silica gel using 30% ethyl acetate in petroleum ether (b.p. 40-60°C) for the elution gave 12.32 g of N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester as an oil. MS: m/e 718
20 [M+H]⁺.

iv) A solution of 10 g (13.95 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in 30 ml of piperidine and 120 ml of
25 dichloromethane was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using firstly 20% ethyl acetate in hexane and then 10% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution. Evaporation gave 6.9 g of N-[N-[2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in the form of
30 an oil which was used in the next step without further purification.

v) A solution of 6.9 g of the foregoing oil, 2.13 g
35 (13.95 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 2.68 g (13.95 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 5.93 g (13.95 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert.-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid in 150 ml of dichloromethane was

stirred at room temperature overnight. The solution was washed with water, sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation and chromatography of the residue on silica gel using 30% ethyl acetate in petroleum ether (b.p. 40-60°C) for the elution gave 10.89 g of N-[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester as a thick oil. MS: m/e 903 [M+H]⁺.

10

vi) A solution of 10.89 g (12.07 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in 30 ml of piperidine and 120 ml of dichloromethane was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using firstly 20% ethyl acetate in hexane and then 10% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution. Evaporation gave N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in the form of an oil which was used in the next step without further purification.

vii) A solution of the foregoing oil, 4.96 g (12.07 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid, 1.85 g (12.07 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and 2.32 g (12.07 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 100 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solution was washed with water, sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation and chromatography of the residue on silica gel using ethyl acetate for the elution gave 10.088 g of N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester as a white solid. MS: m/e 1074 [M+H]⁺.

30

35

viii) A solution of 10.088 g (9.4 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl] O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in 30 ml of piperidine and 120 ml of dichloromethane was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using firstly 20% ethyl acetate in hexane and then 10% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution. Evaporation gave N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in the form of an oil which was used in the next step without further purification.

ix) A solution of 8 g of the foregoing oil, 1.64 g (9.4 mmol) of tert-butyl hydrogen succinate, 1.44 g (9.4 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and 1.805 g (9.4 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solution was washed with water, sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation and trituration of the residue with acetone gave 6.87 g of N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester as a white solid. MS: m/e 1008.6 [M+H]⁺, m/e 1030.3 [M+Na]⁺.

x) A solution of 6.8 g (6.75 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in 200 ml of dimethylformamide was hydrogenated over 600 mg of 10% palladium/carbon for 1 hour. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated to give 15 g of crude product which was chromatographed on silica gel using 10-15% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution to give 6 g of N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-

valyl]-L-leucine as a white solid of melting point 235-236°C; MS: m/e 918.4 [M+H]⁺, m/e 940.3 [M+Na]⁺.

xi) 370 mg (2.5 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxy-
5 formamido)butyroxamate were dissolved in 20 ml of
anhydrous tetrahydrofuran under nitrogen and the solution was
cooled to 0°C in an ice-bath. 1.5 ml (1.5 mmol) of 1M lithium
aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran were added and the mixture
was stirred at 0°C for 10 minutes. 20 ml of saturated aqueous
10 potassium hydrogen sulphate were added and the mixture was
stirred vigorously under nitrogen for 30 minutes at room
temperature. The mixture was then diluted with 50 ml of diethyl
ether and the organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous
magnesium sulphate and the solvent was evaporated. The residue
15 was dissolved in 10 ml of a saturated methanolic hydrogen
chloride solution, stirred for 1 hour, then diluted with 50 ml of
toluene and evaporated to dryness. The resulting oil was dis-
solved in 10 ml of dichloromethane and 184 mg (0.2 mmol) of N-
[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
20 α-aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenyl-
alanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 58 mg (0.3 mmol) of 2-(3-
dimethylaminopropyl-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 41 mg
(0.3 mmol) of 1-hydroxy-7-azabenzotriazole and 350 mg
(3.0 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine were added. The mixture was
25 stirred for 30 minutes then washed in sequence with saturated
sodium bicarbonate solution and 2M hydrochloric acid and dried
over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. The solution was evaporated
to dryness and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel
using 4% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution. After
30 trituration with diethyl ether there were obtained 110 mg of N2-
[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
α-aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenyl-
alanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-
leucinamide as a white solid of melting point 242-244°C. MS:
35 m/e 1001.5 [M+H-MeOH]⁺, m/e 1055 [M+Na]⁺.

Analysis for C₅₃H₈₈O₁₄N₆ [1033.315].

Calculated: C, 61.61; H, 8.58; N, 8.13%

Found: C, 61.52, H, 8.45; N, 8.19%

Example 2

70 mg (0.067 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxy-
5 carbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-
[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide were stirred
in a mixture of 4 ml of trifluoroacetic acid, 4 ml of dichloro-
methane and 30 mg of water at room temperature for 30 minutes.
10 The solution was evaporated to dryness in a vacuum and the
residue was chromatographed on silica gel using dichloro-
methane/methanol/acetic acid/water (60:13:2:2) for the elution.
There were obtained 36 mg of 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[(3-carboxy-
propionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenyl-
15 alanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-pentynal (9:1
mixture of diastereoisomers) as a white solid. MS: m/e 829.6
[M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

20

i) A solution of 12.17 g (57.14 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxy-
carbonyl)-1(S)-amino-4-pentynoic acid, 8.74 g (64.74 mmol) of
hydroxybenzotriazole, 6.96 g (71.43 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl-
hydroxylamine, 8.21 g (71.43 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine and
25 13.7 g (71.43 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl-
carbodiimide hydrochloride in 250 ml of dichloromethane was
stirred for 18 hours, then washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and
saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried and evaporated to
give 14.2 g of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-
30 pentynohydroxamate as a viscous gum which slowly crystallized.
Analysis for C₁₂H₂₀N₂O₄ [256.302].
Calculated: C, 56.24; H, 7.87; N, 10.93%
Found: C, 56.01, H, 7.81; N, 10.92%

35 ii) 10 ml (10 mmol) of 1M lithium aluminium hydride in tetra-
hydrofuran were added to a solution of 3.15 g (12.3 mmol) of
N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-pentynohydrox-
amate in 50 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran at 0°C under a nitrogen

atmosphere. The solution was stirred for 20 minutes and then 40 ml of saturated potassium hydrogen sulphate solution were added dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 15 minutes and then diluted with diethyl ether. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to give an oil which was dissolved in 50 ml of methanolic hydrogen chloride solution. The solution was left at room temperature for 1 hour and then evaporated to dryness to give a dark brown gum. 1.05 g of the gum were added to a solution of 2.06 g (5.84 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucine, 867 mg (6.42 mmol) of hydroxybenzotriazole, 1.233 g (6.42 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 2.216 g (19.27 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine in 40 ml of dichloromethane. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to give a gum which was chromatographed on silica gel using ethyl acetate/petrol (2:3) for the elution. There were obtained 1.1 g of N2-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-N1-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide as an off-white solid. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.86 (6H,dd), 1.35-1.65 (3H,m), 2.22-2.39 (2H,m), 2.75(1H,t), 3.22 (3H,s), 3.27 (3H,s), 3.91 (1H,m), 4.08 (1H,m), 4.15-4.3 (4H,m), 7.29 (2H,m), 7.4 (2H,t), 7.42 (1H,d), 7.71 (2H,d), 7.84 (1H,d), 7.88 (2H,d).

iii) 525 mg (1.1 mmol) of N2-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-N1-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 20 ml of dichloromethane and 5 ml of piperidine and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using firstly ethyl acetate/petrol (1:1) and then methanol/dichloromethane (1:9) for the elution. Evaporation of the dichloromethane solution gave a gum which was added to a solution of 363 mg (1.03 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-leucine, 149 mg (1.1 mmol) of hydroxybenzotriazole and 288 mg (1.5 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 15 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture was stirred for

18 hours, then washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to dryness. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel using ethyl acetate/petrol (1:2) for the elution to give
5 501 mg of N²-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide as a white foam. MS: m/e 592.3 [M+H]⁺, 560.3 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

iv) 490 mg (0.83 mmol) of N²-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 16 ml of dichloromethane and 4 ml of piperidine and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel
15 using firstly ethyl acetate/petrol (1:1) and then methanol/dichloromethane (1:9) for the elution. Evaporation of the dichloromethane solution gave a gum which was added to a solution of 321 mg (0.8 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanine, 122 mg (0.9 mmol) of
20 hydroxybenzotriazole and 192 mg (1 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 15 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture was stirred for 18 hours, then washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium
25 bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to dryness. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel using ethyl acetate/petrol (2:3) for the elution to give a white foam which was dissolved in 16 ml of dichloromethane and 4 ml of piperidine and left at room temperature for 30 minutes. The mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was
30 chromatographed on silica gel using firstly ethyl acetate/petrol (1:1) and then methanol/dichloromethane (1:9) for the elution. Evaporation of the dichloromethane solution gave a gum which was added to a solution of 213 mg (0.5 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid,
35 74 mg (0.55 mmol) of hydroxybenzotriazole and 115 mg (0.6 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture was stirred for 18 hours, then washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and

saturated sodium bicarbonate, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to dryness. Trituration of the residue with diethyl ether gave 345 mg of N²-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)-methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-leucinamide as a white solid. MS: m/e 938 [M+H]⁺, 906 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

v) 340 mg (0.36 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 12 ml of dichloromethane and 3 ml of piperidine and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using firstly ethyl acetate/petrol (1:1) and then methanol/dichloromethane (1:9) for the elution. Evaporation of the dichloromethane solution gave a gum which was added to a solution of 144 mg (0.35 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid, 54 mg (0.4 mmol) of hydroxybenzotriazole and 96 mg (0.5 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 15 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture was stirred for 18 hours, then washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to dryness. Trituration of the residue with diethyl ether gave 360 mg of N²-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid. MS: m/e 1077 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

vi) 350 mg (0.32 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 12 ml of dichloromethane and 3 ml of piperidine and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes.

The mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using firstly ethyl acetate/petrol (1:1) and then methanol/dichloromethane (1:9) for the elution. Evaporation of the dichloromethane solution gave a foam which
5 was added to a solution of 104 mg (0.6 mmol) of succinic acid monotert-butyl ester, 81 mg (0.6 mmol) of hydroxybenzotriazole and 192 mg (1 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture was stirred for 18 hours, then washed with 2M hydro-
10 chloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to dryness. Chromatography of the residue on silica gel using 4% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution and trituration with ethyl acetate gave 145 mg of
15 N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butynyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid. MS: m/e 1043 [M+H]⁺, 1011 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

20

Example 3

94 mg (0.86 mmol) of N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-
25 [3,3,3-trifluoro-1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-L-leucinamide were stirred in a mixture of 4 ml of trifluoroacetic acid, 4 ml of dichloromethane and 30 mg of water at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solution was evaporated to dryness in a vacuum and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using dichloro-
30 methane/methanol/acetic acid/water (120:15:3:2) for the elution. There were obtained 41 mg of 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde (7:1 mixture of diastereoisomers) as a white solid. MS:
35 m/e 873 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

184 mg (0.2 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine were suspended in 6 ml of dichloromethane and treated
5 with 34 mg (0.25 mmol) of hydroxybenzotriazole followed by 391 mg (1.75 mmol) of 3,3,3-trifluoro-1(S)-dimethoxymethylpropylamine hydrochloride and 690 mg (6 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours, then washed in sequence with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium
10 bicarbonate solution and dried over magnesium sulphate. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the resulting solid, after trituration with diethyl ether, was chromatographed on silica gel using 4% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution. There were obtained 101 mg of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-
15 tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid. MS: m/e 1088 [M+H]⁺.

20 Example 4

0.02 g (0.006 mmol) of 5-[4-[[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-N-3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-
25 amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]-N-(4-methyl- α -(RS)-phenylbenzyl)valeramide-polystyrene conjugate was suspended and agitated in 0.7 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained and then resuspended in and agitated with 0.7 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1)
30 for a further 5 minutes. The resin was then drained and washed five times with 1.5 ml of dimethylformamide.

The resin was then suspended in a solution of 0.026 g (0.06 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine in 0.3 ml of dimethylformamide and then a
35 mixture of 0.019 g (0.06 mmol) of 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate and 0.012 g (0.12 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine dissolved in 0.3 ml of

dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 2 hours the resin was drained and washed five times with 1.5 ml of dimethylformamide.

5 The resin was resuspended in and agitated with 1.5 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained and resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/piperidine(4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then, the resin was drained and washed five times with 1.5 ml of
10 dimethylformamide.

The resin was then suspended in a solution of 0.025 g (0.06 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid in 0.3 ml of dimethylformamide and then a
15 mixture of 0.019 g (0.06 mmol) of 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoraborate and 0.012 g (0.12 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine dissolved in 0.3 ml of dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 2 hours the resin was drained and washed five times with 1.5 ml of
20 dimethylformamide.

The resin was resuspended in and agitated with 1.5 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained and resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then, the
25 resin was drained and washed five times with 1.5 ml of dimethylformamide.

The resin was then suspended in a solution of 0.01 g
30 (0.06 mmol) tert-butyl hydrogen succinate in 0.3 ml of dimethylformamide and treated with a mixture of 0.019 g (0.06 mmol) 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate and 0.012 g (0.12 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine dissolved in 0.3 ml of dimethylformamide. After
35 agitating for 2 hours the resin was drained and washed 5 times with 1.5 ml of dimethylformamide and then twice with 1.5 ml of dichloromethane.

The resin was treated with 0.8 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/water (19:1) and then agitated for 30 minutes. It was then filtered off and washed with 0.8 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/water (19:1). The combined trifluoroacetic acid/water mixtures
5 were then evaporated in a vacuum centrifuge and the residue was suspended in 0.8 ml of acetonitrile/water (1:1) and freeze dried. There were obtained 6.3 mg of 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxy-propionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-tri-
10 fluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 941.5 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 18 g (60.0 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(RS)-(tert-butoxy-formamido)-4,4,4-trifluorobutyrohydroxamate were dissolved in
15 230 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled to 0°C. 48 ml (48 mmol) of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran were then added dropwise while maintaining the temperature at 0°C. The mixture was stirred for
20 10 minutes at 0°C and then the reaction was quenched by the dropwise addition of saturated potassium hydrogen sulphate solution to pH 1 while maintaining the temperature at below 20°C. The resulting white slurry was stirred vigorously for a further 30 minutes and was then partitioned in three equal
25 aliquots of diethyl ether. The combined diethyl ether fractions were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate, filtered and evaporated. The residue was then dissolved in 100 ml of anhydrous saturated methanolic hydrogen chloride solution and left overnight at 4°C.
30 The mixture was evaporated and the residue was triturated with dichloromethane. The filtrate was evaporated and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using 5% methanol, 3% acetic acid and 1.5% water in dichloromethane for the elution. There were obtained 8.80 g of 3,3,3-trifluoro-2(RS)-(dimethoxy-methyl)-propylamine hydrochloride as a white solid. ¹H NMR :
35 (CDCl₃) δ : 2.60-2.96 (m, 2H), 3.49 (d, 6H), 3.57-3.69 (q, 1H), 4.66 (d, 1H), 8.72 (br s, 3H).

- ii) To a stirred mixture of 5.6 g (25.0 mmol) of 3,3,3-trifluoro-2(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)-propylamine hydrochloride 3.65 ml of triethylamine, 7.8 g (25.0 mmol) of 4-[4-(ethoxycarbonyl)butoxy]2,6-dimethoxybenzaldehyde and 25 g of 3 Å
5 molecular sieves in dichloromethane were added 5.8 g (27.5 mmol) of sodium triacetoxyborohydride. After 3 hours the molecular sieves were removed by filtration. The filtrate was then washed with three equal aliquots of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium
10 sulphate and filtered. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the resulting orange oil was chromatographed on silica gel using 60% ethyl acetate in hexane for the elution. There were obtained 10.4 g of ethyl 5-[4-[[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propylamino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]-
15 valerate as a pale orange oil; ¹H NMR : (CDCl₃)δ: 1.25 (t,3H), 1.78-1.87 (m,4H), 2.18-2.52 (m,4H), 2.86-2.92 (m,1H), 3.33 (d,6H), 3.77 (s,6H), 3.81 (d,2H), 3.96 (t,2H), 4.13 (q,2H), 4.26 (d,1H), 6.18 (s,2H); MS: m/e 482.2 [M+H], 504.2 [M+Na].
- iii) A solution of 6.6 g (18.7 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucine and 9.7 g (18.7 mmol) of 7-azabenzotriazol-1-yloxytris(pyrrolidino)phosphonium hexa-
20 fluorophosphate in 50 ml of anhydrous dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes. To this mixture were then added 6.0 g (12.4 mmol) of ethyl 5-[4-[[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propylamino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]valerate and 4.3 ml of (24.8 mmol) diisopropylethylamine. After stirring overnight at 25°C the mixture
25 was diluted with dichloromethane and washed in sequence with water, 10% citric acid solution, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate and filtered. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was
30 chromatographed on silica gel using 30% ethyl acetate in hexane for the elution. There were obtained 8.06 g of ethyl 5-[4-[[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]-N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]valerate; MS: m/e 839.4 [M+Na], 855.3 [M+K].

- iv) 8.0 g (9.8 mmol) of 5-[4-[[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]-N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]valerate and 40 ml
5 of piperidine were dissolved in 145 ml of dry dichloromethane and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. It was then evaporated in a vacuum and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using 2% methanol, 49% dichloromethane and 49% hexane followed by 5% methanol, 47.5% dichloromethane
10 and 47.5% hexane for the elution. There were obtained 4.09 g of ethyl 5-[4-[[N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-N-(L-leucyl)amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]valerate as a clear stiff oil; MS: m/e 595 [M+H].
- 15 v) A solution of 2.76 g (7.8 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)-methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valine, 1.60 g (8.5 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 1.60 g (10.7 mmol) of N-hydroxybenzotriazole in 70 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at 0°C for 15 minutes. There were
20 then added 4.06 g (7.1 mmol) of ethyl 5-[4-[[N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-N-(L-leucyl)-amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]valerate and 2.7 ml (21.3 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine in 70 ml of dichloromethane. After stirring overnight at room temperature the mixture was washed in sequence with
25 10% citric acid solution, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate, filtered and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel using 35% ethyl acetate in hexane for the elution. There were obtained 6.11 g of
30 ethyl 5-[4-[[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxyethyl)propyl]amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]valerate as a white foam; MS: m/e 952.5 [M+Na], 968.5 [M+K].
- 35 vi) 5.8 g (6.3 mmol) of ethyl 5-[4-[[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)-methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxyethyl)propyl]amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]valerate and 18 ml of piperidine were

- dissolved in 90 ml of dichloromethane and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. It was then evaporated and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using 3% methanol, 48.5% dichloromethane and 48.5% hexane for the elution. There were obtained 4.1 g of ethyl 5-[4-[[N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-N-[N-(3-methyl-L-valyl)-L-leucyl]amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]-valerate as a white foam; MS: m/e 708.6 [M+H], 730.5 [M+Na].
- vii) 4.0 g (5.7 mmol) of ethyl 5-[4-[[N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]-N-[N-(3-methyl-L-valyl)-L-leucyl]-amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]-valerate were dissolved in 40 ml of methanol. 2.4 g (17.3 mmol) of potassium carbonate and 8.0 ml of water were then added and the mixture was stirred for 2 days at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was dissolved in 20 ml of water and 20 ml of dioxan. 2.9 g (8.6 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)-methoxycarbonyloxy]-succinimide were then added and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours. The mixture was adjusted to pH 3 with 10% citric acid and then washed with three equal aliquots of dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate, filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel using 4% tert-butyl methyl ether in dichloromethane for the elution. There were obtained 5.12 g of 5-[4-[[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]-valeric acid as a white foam; MS: m/e 870.8 [M+H-MeOH], 888.7 [M+H-CH₃], 889.7 [M-CH₃], 902.7 [M+H], 924.7 [M+Na].
- viii) 5.4 g (5.4 mmol) of 4-methylbenzhydrylamine resin were swollen in 30 ml of dimethylformamide, excess solvent was drained from the resin and it was then washed twice with 20 ml dimethylformamide/N-methylmorpholine (9:1). The resin was then resuspended in 10 ml of dimethylformamide containing 4.98 g (5.4 mmol) of 5-[4-[[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-

- dimethoxymethyl)propyl]amino]methyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]-valeric acid and 1.74 g (5.4 mmol) of 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoraborate. Thereto there were added 1.18 ml (10.8 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine
- 5 dissolved in 10 ml of dimethylformamide. The resulting mixture was agitated for 2 hours and the resin was then drained and washed five times with 30 ml of dimethylformamide. The resin was then resuspended in 30 ml of dimethylformamide containing 2.03 ml (21.6 mmol) of acetic anhydride and 2.96 ml (27 mmol)
- 10 of N-methylmorpholine. This mixture was agitated for 30 minutes and the resin was then drained and washed five times with 30 ml of dimethylformamide each time. The resin was resuspended in and agitated in 30 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained,
- 15 resuspended and again agitated in the foregoing dimethylformamide/piperidine mixture for a further 5 minutes. The resin was then drained and washed five times with 30 ml of dimethylformamide.
- 20 ix) A solution of 3.2 g (8.1 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-methylphenyl)-L-alanine and 2.17 g (6.75 mmol) of 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate in 22 ml of dimethylformamide was added to the resin from paragraph viii) and subsequently 1.5 ml (13.5 mmol)
- 25 of N-methylmorpholine were added. The mixture was agitated for 30 minutes and then the resin was drained and washed five times with 30 ml of dimethylformamide, twice with 30 ml of dichloromethane, twice with 30 ml of ethyl acetate and twice with 30 ml of diethyl ether. After drying there were obtained
- 30 8.95 g of 5-[4-[[N-[N-[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-N-[3,3,3-trifluoro-1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)propyl]amino]methyl]-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy]-N-(4-methyl- α -(RS)-phenylbenzyl)-valeramide-polystyrene conjugate as a pale brown solid
- 35 (0.31 mmol/g loading estimated by quantitation of dibenzofulvene at 301 nm).

Example 5

0.236 g (0.215 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
5 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-
[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 1.5 ml of water, 13.5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 7 ml of dichloromethane and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and then
10 left to stand at 4°C for 18 hours. The solution was then diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off. The solid was purified by RP-HPLC on a Dynamax C18 column (5 micron, 300Å, 21.4 mm x 50 mm). The elution gradient comprised 95%
15 SSA:5% SSB to 95%:SSB 5% SSA over 6 minutes and there were obtained, after lyophilization, 69 mg of 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenyl-boronic acid as a foam; MS: m/e 847 [M+H].

20

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 2 g (9.48 mmol) of 2-(dichloromethyl)-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane were dissolved in 30 ml of tetra-
25 hydrofuran and the solution was cooled under a nitrogen atmosphere to -78°C. 9.5 ml (9.5 mmol) of 1M allylmagnesium bromide were added dropwise and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The solution was partitioned between ethyl acetate, saturated sodium chloride solution and 2M hydro-
30 chloric acid solution. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate and the organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After filtration and evaporation the oil obtained was distilled to give 1.45 g of 2-(1(RS)-chloro-3-butenyl)-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane; b.p.
35 53°C/0.4 mm Hg.

ii) 6.6 ml (6.6 mmol) of 1M lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise to a solution of 1.43 g

(6.6 mmol) of 2-(1(RS)-chloro-3-butenyl)-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran under nitrogen at -78°C. The solution was then stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was taken up in diethyl ether. Insoluble material was removed by filtration and the filtrate was cooled to 0°C. 1.5 ml (19.8 mmol) of trifluoroacetic acid were added and the solution was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. The resulting precipitate was filtered off and dried to give 0.5 g of α -(RS)-allyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate which was used in the next step without further purification.

iii) 0.25 g (0.27 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 4 ml of dimethylformamide and 4 ml of dichloromethane. 0.15 ml (1.6 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -15°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 50 mg (0.38 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -15°C. 0.1 g (0.32 mmol) of α -(RS)-allyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. After evaporation the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 2M hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with 2M hydrochloric acid, water and saturated sodium chloride solution and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporation there was obtained 0.3 g of N²-N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide in the form of a solid; MS: m/e 1097 [M+H].

35

Example 6

0.25 g (0.23 mmol) of N²-N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)propionyl-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
5 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-
[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)propyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 1.5 ml of water, 13.5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 7 ml of dichloromethane and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and then left to
10 stand at 4°C for 18 hours. The solution was diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off. The solid was purified by RP-HPLC on an Aquapore octyl column (20 micron, 100 mm x 10 mm). The elution gradient comprised 95% SSA:5% SSB to 5%
15 SSA:95% SSB over 6 minutes and there were obtained, after lyophilization, 92 mg of 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid as a foam; MS: m/e 835 [M+H].

20

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 2.64 g (12.5 mmol) of 2-(dichloromethyl)-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane were dissolved in 30 ml of
25 tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled under a nitrogen atmosphere to -78°C. 11.8 ml (12.5 mmol) of 1.06M ethylmagnesium bromide were added dropwise and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The solution was partitioned between ethyl acetate, saturated sodium chloride
30 solution and 2M hydrochloric acid solution. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate and the organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After filtration and evaporation the oil obtained was distilled to give 2.04 g of 2-[1(RS)-chloropropyl]-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-
35 dioxaborolane; b.p. 53°C/0.8 mm Hg.

ii) 10 ml (10 mmol) of 1M lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise to a solution of 2.03 g

(9.9 mmol) of 2-[1(RS)-chloropropyl]-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane in 20 ml tetrahydrofuran under a nitrogen atmosphere at -78°C. The solution was then stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the
5 residue was taken up in diethyl ether. Insoluble material was removed by filtration and the filtrate was cooled to 0°C. 2.3 ml (30 mmol) of trifluoroacetic acid were added and the solution was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. The resulting precipitate was filtered off and dried to give 0.5 g of α -(RS)-ethyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoro-
10 acetate as a white solid.

Analysis for $C_{11}H_{21}BNF_3O_4$ [299.15].

Calculated: C, 44.17; H, 7.08; N, 4.68%

Found: C, 44.06, H, 7.05, N, 4.71%.

15

iii) 0.25 g (0.27 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 2 ml of dimethylformamide and 5 ml of
20 dichloromethane. 0.15 ml (1.6 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -15°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 50 mg (0.38 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -15°C. 0.1 g (0.33 mmol) of α -(RS)-ethyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-
25 dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. After evaporation the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 2M hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with 2M hydrochloric acid, water and saturated sodium chloride solution
30 and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporation there was obtained 0.26 g of N2-N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)propyl]-L-
35 leucinamide in the form of a solid; MS: m/e 1085 [M+H].

Example 7

0.16 g (14.6 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
5 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-
[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)butyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 4 ml of trifluoroacetate acid and 4 ml of dichloromethane. 4 drops of water were added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The
10 residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried to give, after lyophilization, 139 mg of 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]butylboronic acid as a foam; MS: m/e 849 [M+H].

15

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 0.5 g (2.37 mmol) of 2-(dichloromethyl)-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane was dissolved in 10 ml of tetra-
20 hydrofuran and the solution was cooled under a nitrogen atmosphere to -78°C. 2.4 ml (2.4 mmol) of 1M propylmagnesium bromide were added dropwise and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The solution was partitioned between ethyl acetate, saturated sodium chloride solution and 2M
25 hydrochloric acid solution. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate and the organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporation there was obtained 0.38 g of 2-[1(RS)-chlorobutyl]-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane as an oil which was used in the next step without
30 further purification.

ii) 1.7 ml (1.7 mmol) of 1M lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise to a solution of 0.37 g (1.69 mmol) of 2-[1(RS)-chlorobutyl]-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-
35 dioxaborolane in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran under nitrogen at -78°C. The solution was then stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was taken up in diethyl ether. Insoluble material was removed by

filtration and the filtrate was cooled to 0°C. 0.39 ml (5.1 mmol) of trifluoroacetic acid was added and the solution was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. The solution was evaporated and the residue was co-evaporated with toluene to give 0.62 g of α -(RS)-propyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate as a brown oil which was used in the next step without further purification.

iii) 0.2 g (0.218 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 2 ml of dimethylformamide and 6 ml of dichloromethane. 0.12 ml (1.1 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -15°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 40 mg (0.31 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -15°C. 0.14 g (0.44 mmol) of α -(RS)-propyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 66 hours. After evaporation the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 2M hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with 2M hydrochloric acid, water and saturated sodium chloride solution and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporation there was obtained 0.17 g of N₂-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N₁-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)butyl]-L-leucinamide in the form of a solid; NMR (DMSO, 400 MHz) δ : 0.75-0.9 (m,17H), 1.01-1.08 (m,6H), 1.15-1.25 (m,1H), 1.35 9s,36H), 1.4-1.7 (m,4H), 1.75-1.8 (m,1H), 2.05-2.15 (m,2H), 2.23 (s,3H), 2.29-2.41 (m,6H), 2.55-2.6 (m,1H), 2.7-2.74 (m,1H), 2.95-3.05 (m,1H), 4.15-4.25 (m,3H), 4.48-4.55 (m,1H), 4.6-4.7 (m,1H), 7.05-7.11 (m,4H), 7.7-7.81 (m,2H), 8.05-8.12 (m,2H), 8.15-8.25 (m,2H).

35

Example 8

0.126 g (0.116 mmol) of N₂-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-

α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-
N1[3,3-difluoro-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-butyl]-L-leucinamide
was dissolved in 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 5 ml of
dichloromethane. A few drops of water were added and the
5 solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The residue
was evaporated, the residue was triturated with diethyl ether and
the resulting solid was filtered off. The solid was purified by
chromatography on silica gel using dichloromethane/methanol/
acetic acid/water (75:15:3:2) for the elution. There were
10 obtained 67 mg of 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L-
 α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-
L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4-difluorovaleraldehyde as a cream
coloured solid of melting point 128-130°C.

15 The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 1.5 g (4.62 mmol) of 4,4-difluoro-L-norvaline p-toluene-
sulphonate were dissolved in dimethylformamide. 1.71 g
(7.85 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate and 3.23 ml
20 (23.25 mmol) of triethylamine were added and the solution was
stirred at 60°C for 3 hours. The solution was evaporated and the
residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 2M hydro-
chloric acid. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium
sulphate and evaporated. The resulting oil was purified by
25 chromatography on silica gel using ethyl acetate for the elution.
There were obtained 1.16 g of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4,4-
difluoro-L-norvaline as an orange oil which was used directly in
the next step.

30 ii) 1.16 g (4.62 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4,4-
difluoro-L-norvaline were dissolved in 30 ml of dichloromethane.
6.4 ml (46.2 mmol) of triethylamine, 564 mg (4.62 mmol) of
N,N-dimethylaminopyridine, 1.77 g (9.24 mmol) of 1-(3-
dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and
35 1.8 g (18.5 mmol) of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride
were added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for
18 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed
with 2M hydrochloric acid and aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate

solution, dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and evaporated to give an oil which was purified by chromatography on silica gel using ethyl acetate for the elution. There were obtained 547 mg of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4,4-difluoro-
5 valerohydroxamate as a colourless oil; MS: m/e 297 [M+H].

iii) 547 mg (1.85 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4,4-difluorovalerohydroxamate were dissolved in 12 ml of tetrahydrofuran and the solution was stirred at 0°C.
10 1.76 ml (1.76 mmol) of 1M lithium aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran were added and the solution was stirred for 15 minutes. The mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous potassium hydrogen sulphate solution. The organic layer was evaporated and the residue was dissolved in
15 freshly prepared methanolic hydrogen chloride solution. After 1 hour the solution was evaporated to give 372 mg of 3,3-difluoro-1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)butylamine hydrochloride as a white solid; MS: m/e 184 [M+H].

20 iv) 0.3 g (0.33 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 15 ml of dichloromethane. 0.22 ml (1.98 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine, 96 mg (0.5 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 45 mg (0.33 mmol) of hydroxybenzotriazole and 217 mg (0.99 mmol) of 3,3-difluoro-1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)butylamine hydrochloride were added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The mixture was washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and
25 aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried. There were obtained 143 g of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-
30 [3,3-difluoro-1(S)-dimethoxymethyl)butyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1106 [M+Na]⁺.
35

Example 9

80 mg (0.075 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
5 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-
[1(R)-dimethoxymethyl]-2-(methylthio)ethyl]-L-leucinamide
were dissolved in 10 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane
(1:1) containing 3 drops of water and the solution was stirred for
90 minutes under a nitrogen atmosphere. The solution was
10 evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was re-
evaporated twice with toluene. The solid was triturated with
10 ml of diethyl ether to give 60 mg of 2(R)-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-
carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-
phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(methylthio)-
15 propionaldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 851.5 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 2 g (8.51 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-S-methyl-L-
20 cysteine were dissolved in 60 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran
and then 1.81 g (11.9 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate,
2.28 g (11.88 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl-
carbodiimide hydrochloride, 1.16 g (11.90 mmol) of N,O-
dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride and 5.9 ml (33.87 mmol) of
25 N,N-diisopropylethylamine were added. The mixture was stirred
overnight at room temperature. The solvent was removed by
evaporation and the residue was partitioned between ethyl
acetate and 5% (w/v) aqueous citric acid. The organic phase was
washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and
30 then with saturated sodium chloride solution, dried over
magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum to give
2.27 g of N,O-dimethyl 2(R)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-3-(methyl-
thio)propionohydroxamate as a colourless oil; MS: m/e 279
[M+H]⁺.

35

ii) 2.22 g (7.90 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(R)-(tert-butoxy-
formamido)-3-(methylthio)propionohydroxamate were dissolved
in 25 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was

cooled to 0°C. 4.69 ml (4.69 mmol) of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise and the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the dropwise addition of saturated aqueous potassium hydrogen sulphate solution and then 50 ml of diethyl ether were added. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 20 minutes. The organic phase was separated, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to give 1.75 g of aldehyde which, without further purification, was dissolved in 20 ml of saturated methanolic hydrogen chloride solution and stirred for 2 hours under a nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was re-evaporated twice with toluene to give 1.3 g of dimethyl acetal as a colourless oil.

90 mg (0.45 mmol) of the dimethyl acetal were dissolved in 40 ml dichloromethane and then 200 mg (0.22 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 100 mg (0.87 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine, 40 mg (0.26 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate and 50 mg (0.26 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride were added. The solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. The organic phase was washed with 5% (w/v) aqueous citric acid and then with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum. The resulting oil was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl ether to give 165 mg of N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(R)-(dimethoxymethyl)-2-(methylthio)ethyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 1065.7 [M+H]⁺.

35

Example 10

50 mg (0.048 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
5 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-
[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide were
dissolved in 4 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (1:1)
containing 3 drops of water and the solution was stirred for
1 hour under nitrogen. The solution was evaporated to dryness
10 under a vacuum and the residue was re-evaporated twice with
toluene. The solid was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl ether to
give 30 mg of 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -
aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-
valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-pentenaldehyde; MS: m/e 831.5 [M+H]⁺.

15

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 1.13 g (7.46 mmol) of L-allylglycine hydrochloride were
dissolved in 20 ml of saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate
20 solution and 20 ml of dioxan. 1.95 g (8.93 mmol) of di-tert-
butyl dicarbonate were added and the solution was stirred
overnight and then evaporated to dryness under a vacuum. The
residue was partitioned between diethyl ether and water. The
aqueous phase was acidified with 2M hydrochloric acid and
25 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was dried over
magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum to give 1.6 g
of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-allylglycine as a colourless oil. ¹H
NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 1.4 (s,9H), 2.4-2.7 (m,2H), 4.3-4.5 (m,1H),
5.0 (br.d,1H), 5.1-5.2 (m,2H), 5.6-5.8 (m,1H)

30

ii) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-penteno-
hydroxamate was obtained in a manner analogous to that
described in Example 10 i) from 1.6 g (7.44 mmol) of N-(tert-
butoxycarbonyl)-L-allylglycine, 1.4 g (10.4 mmol) of 1-hydroxy-
35 benzotriazole, 1.99 g (10.4 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylamino-
propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 1.02 g (10.46 mmol)
of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride and 2.6 ml
(14.93 mmol) of ethyl diisopropylamine. This gave 1.9 g of

product as a colourless oil. ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 1.4 (s,9H), 2.3-2.6 (m,2H), 3.2 (s,3H), 3.8 (s,3H), 4.6-4.7 (m,1H), 5.0-5.4 (m,3H), 5.6-5.8 (m,1H).

5 iii) 1.9 g (7.36 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxy-
formamido)-4-pentenohydroxamate were dissolved in 20 ml of
anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled to 0°C.
5.40 ml (5.4 mmol) of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium
hydride in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise and the mixture
10 was stirred for 25 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the
dropwise addition of saturated aqueous potassium hydrogen
sulphate and then 50 ml of diethyl ether were added. The
mixture was stirred vigorously for 20 minutes. The organic
phase was separated, washed with saturated aqueous sodium
15 bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and
evaporated to give the aldehyde which, without further
purification, was dissolved in 25 ml of saturated methanolic
hydrogen chloride solution and stirred for 2 hours at room
temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the
20 residue was re-evaporated twice with toluene to give the amino
acid acetal as a brown oil.

iv) 40 mg (0.22 mmol) of the amino acid acetal were dissolved
in 4 ml of dichloromethane and then 200 mg (0.22 mmol) of N-
25 [N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
 α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenyl-
alanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 0.1 ml (0.78 mmol) of N-
ethylmorpholine, 35 mg (0.22 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole
monohydrate and 50 mg (0.26 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylamino-
30 propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride were added. The
solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. The organic
phase was washed with 5% (w/v) aqueous citric acid solution and
then with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried
over magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum. The
35 resulting oil was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl ether to give
148 mg of N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-
tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-
L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-

3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 1013.6 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

Example 11

5

90 mg (0.081 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[2-(butylthio)-1(R)-(dimethoxymethyl)ethyl]-L-leucinamide were
10 dissolved in 10 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (1:1) containing 3 drops of water and the solution was stirred for 90 minutes under nitrogen. The solution was evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was re-evaporated twice with toluene. The solid was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl
15 ether to give 80 mg of 2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(butylthio)propionaldehyde as a white solid. MS: m/e 893.4 [M+H]⁺.

20

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 2 g (16.53 mmol) of L-cysteine were dissolved in 40 ml of water/ethanol (1:1) together with 1.33 g (33.25 mmol) of sodium hydroxide pellets. 3.04 g (16.53 mmol) of butyl iodide
25 were added and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. The resulting S-alkylated product was treated with 3.96 g (18.14 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. A further 3.61 g (16.53 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate were added and the mixture was stirred
30 overnight. The solution was evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was partitioned between diethyl ether and saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The aqueous phase was acidified by partitioning in 2M hydrochloric acid and ethyl acetate, the separated organic phase was dried
35 over magnesium sulphate and the solvent was removed by evaporation to give 4.3 g of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-S-butyl-L-cysteine as a brown oil; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 0.9 (t,3H), 1.3-1.6 (m,4H), 1.4 (s,9H), 2.55 (t,2H), 3.0 (br.d,2H), 4.5 (m,1H),

5.3 (br.d,1H).

ii) N,O-Dimethyl 2(R)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-3-(butylthio)-propionohydroxamate was obtained in a manner analogous to that described in Example 10 i) from 2.15 g (7.76 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-S-butyl-L-cysteine, 1.19 g (7.77 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate, 2.24 g (11.68 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 1.14 g (11.68 mmol) of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride and 1.34 g (11.64 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine in 30 ml of dichloromethane. This gave 2.0 g of product as a colourless oil after column chromatography using ethyl acetate/petrol (1:2) as the eluent. ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 0.9 (t,3H), 1.3-1.6 (m,4H), 1.4 (s,9H), 2.55 (t,2H), 2.6 -2.7 (dd,1H), 2.8-2.9 (dd,1H), 3.2 (s,3H), 3.75 (s,3H), 4.8-4.9 (m,1H), 5.3 (br.d,1H).

iii) 0.3 g (0.94 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(R)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-3-(butylthio)propionohydroxamate was dissolved in 10 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled to 0°C. 0.55 ml (0.55 mmol) of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the dropwise addition of saturated aqueous potassium hydrogen sulphate and then 20 ml of diethyl ether were added. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 20 minutes. The organic phase was separated, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to give the aldehyde which, without further purification, was dissolved in 20 ml of saturated methanolic hydrogen chloride solution and stirred for 2 hours under a nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was re-evaporated twice with toluene to give the amino acid acetal as a brown oil.

200 mg (0.82 mmol) of the amino acid acetal were dissolved in 40 ml of dichloromethane and then 200 mg (0.22 mmol) of [N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-

glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 100 mg (0.87 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine, 40 mg (0.26 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and 50 mg (0.26 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride were added. The solution was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The organic phase was washed with 5% (w/v) aqueous citric acid solution and then with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum. The resulting oil was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl ether to give 160 mg of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[2-(butylthio)-[1(R)-(dimethoxymethyl)ethyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 1075.6 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

15

Example 12

56 mg (0.049 mmol) of N¹-[2-(benzylthio)-1(R)-(dimethoxymethyl)ethyl]-N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 10 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (1:1) containing 3 drops of water and the solution was stirred for 90 minutes. The solution was evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was re-evaporated twice with toluene. The solid was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl ether to give 40 mg of 3-(benzylthio)-2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propionaldehyde as a white solid. MS: m/e 927.6 (M+H)⁺.

30

The starting material was prepared as follows:

- i) S-Benzyl-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-cysteine was obtained in a manner analogous to that described in Example 10 i) from 1 g (4.74 mmol) of S-benzyl-L-cysteine, 0.8 g (9.5 mmol) of sodium bicarbonate and 1.4 g (6.4 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate. There were obtained 1.4 g of a colourless oil; ¹H NMR (250 MHz,

35

CDCl_3) δ : 1.4 (s,9H), 2.8-2.9 (m,2H), 3.7 (s,2H), 4.4-4.5 (m,1H), 5.3 (d,1H), 7.2-7.4 (m,5H)

ii) N,O-Dimethyl 3-(benzyl)-2(R)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-
5 propionohydroxamate was obtained in a manner analogous to that
described in Example 9 i) from 1.4 g (4.52 mmol) of S-benzyl-N-
(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-cysteine, 0.70 g (4.6 mmol) of 1-
hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate, 1.30 g (6.77 mmol) of 1-(3-
dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 0.66 g
10 (6.77 mmol) of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride and
0.78 g (6.77 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine in 40 ml of dichloro-
methane. There were obtained 0.60 g of a colourless oil; ^1H NMR
(250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 1.4 (s,9H), 2.55-2.65 (dd,1H), 2.75-2.85,
(dd,1H), 3.2 (s,3H), 3.7 (s,3H), 3.72 (s,2H), 4.9 (m,1H), 5.3 (d,1H),
15 7.2 -7.35 (m,5H).

iii) 0.48 g (1.36 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 3-(benzyl)-2(R)-(tert-
butoxyformamido)propionohydroxamate was dissolved in 10 ml of
anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled to 0°C .
20 0.95 ml (0.95 mmol) of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium
hydride in tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise and the mixture
was stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the
dropwise addition of saturated aqueous potassium hydrogen
sulphate and then 20 ml of diethyl ether were added. The
25 mixture was stirred vigorously for 20 minutes. The organic
phase was separated, washed with saturated aqueous sodium
bicarbonate solution, dried magnesium sulphate and evaporated to
give the aldehyde which, without further purification, was
dissolved in 10 ml of saturated methanolic hydrogen chloride
30 solution and stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The
solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was re-
evaporated twice with toluene to give the amino acid acetal as a
brown oil.

35 100 mg (0.36 mmol) of the amino acid acetal were
dissolved in 40 ml of dichloromethane and then 200 mg
(0.22 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-
propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -

glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 100 mg (0.87 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine, 40 mg (0.30 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and 50 mg (0.26 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride were added. The solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. The organic phase was washed with 5% (w/v) aqueous citric acid solution and then with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum. The resulting oil was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl ether to give 160 mg of N1-[2-(benzylthio)-1(R)-(dimethoxymethyl)ethyl]-N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 1109.8 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

15

Example 13

49 mg (0.046 mmol) of N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-pentynyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 4 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (1:1) containing 3 drops of water and the solution was stirred for 1 hour under a nitrogen atmosphere. The solution was evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was re-evaporated twice with toluene. The solid was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl ether to give 30 mg of 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-hexynal as a white solid; MS: m/e 843.6 [M+H]⁺.

30

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) N-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)-L-(2-butynyl)glycine was obtained in a manner analogous to that described in Example 10 i) from 1.0 g (7.80 mmol) of L-(2-butynyl)glycine (prepared according to Sasaki et al. Int. J. Peptide Protein Res 1986, 27, 360-365), 2.66 g (31.7 mmol) of sodium bicarbonate and 1.89 g

35

(8.66 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate. There was obtained 1.94 g of a colourless oil; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 1.45 (s,9H), 1.75 (t,3H), 2.6-2.9 (m,2H), 4.4-4.5 (m,1H), 5.3 (br.d,1H).

5 ii) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-hexyno-
hydroxamate was obtained in a manner analogous to that
described in Example 9 i) from 1.74 g (7.67 mmol) of N-(tert-
butoxycarbonyl)-L-(2-butynyl)glycine, 1.45 g (9.5 mmol) of 1-
hydroxybenzotriazole, 2.06 g (10.73 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethyl-
10 aminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 1.05 g
(10.77 mmol) of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride and
5.3 ml (30.43 mmol) of ethyldiisopropylamine in 80 ml of
tetrahydrofuran. There were obtained 2.0 g of a colourless oil;
 ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 1.4 (s,9H), 1.75 (t,3H), 2.55 (m,2H), 3.2
15 (s,3H), 3.5 (s,3H), 4.7-4.8 (m,1H), 5.35 (br.d,1H).

iii) 1.0 g (3.70 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxy-
formamido)-4-hexynohydroxamate was dissolved in 10 ml of
anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled to 0°C .
20 2.59 ml (2.59 mmol) of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium
hydride in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise and the mixture
was stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the
dropwise addition of 20 ml of saturated aqueous potassium
hydrogen sulphate and then 50 ml of diethyl ether were added.
25 The mixture was stirred vigorously for 30 minutes. The organic
phase was separated, washed with saturated aqueous sodium
bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evapor-
ated to give the aldehyde which, without further purification,
was dissolved in 10 ml of saturated methanolic hydrogen
30 chloride solution and stirred for 2 hours under a nitrogen atmos-
phere at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evapor-
ation and the residue was re-evaporated twice with toluene to
give the amino acid acetal as a brown oil.

35 47 mg (0.24 mmol) of the amino acid acetal were dissolved
in 20 ml of dichloromethane and then 200 mg (0.22 mmol) of N-
[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
 α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenyl-

alanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 0.1 ml (0.78 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine, 42 mg (0.27 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and 59 mg (0.31 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride were added. The solution was stirred
5 overnight at room temperature. The organic phase was washed with 5% (w/v) aqueous citric acid solution and then with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum. The resulting oil was triturated with 10 ml of diethyl ether to give
10 110 mg of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-pentynyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid. MS: m/e 1025.8 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

15

Example 14

0.065 g (0.06 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
20 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)-2-(3-thienyl)ethyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 10 ml of dichloromethane/trifluoroacetic acid (1:1) containing 3 drops of water. The solution was stirred for 3 hours at room temperature. After removal of the solvent by evaporation
25 the crude product was chromatographed on silica gel using dichloromethane:methanol:acetic acid:water (120:15:3:2) as the eluent to give 0.035 g of 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3(3-thienyl)propion-
30 aldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 887.7 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 0.5 g (2.92 mmol) of 3-(3-thienyl)-DL-alanine was
35 dissolved in 15 ml of water and 15 ml of dioxan. 2.5 g (29.76 mmol) of sodium hydrogen carbonate and 3.53 g (16.19 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate were added and the solution was stirred for 2 hours and then evaporated to dryness

under a vacuum. The residue was partitioned between diethyl ether and saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The aqueous phase was acidified with 2M hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate and the solvent was evaporated under a vacuum to give 0.685 g of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-(3-thienyl)-DL-alanine as a colourless oil; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 1.4 (s,9H), 2.9 (dd,1H), 3.15 (dd,1H), 4.3 (m,1H), 7.0 (d,1H), 7.1 (br s,H), 7.3 (m,1H).

10

ii) 0.69 g (2.55 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-(3-thienyl)-DL-alanine was dissolved in 40 ml of dichloromethane. 0.34 g (3.56 mmol) of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride, 0.54 g (3.53 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate, 15 0.68 g (3.55 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 1.0 g (8.70 mmol) of 4-ethylmorpholine were added and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solution was then washed with 5% citric acid solution, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over 20 anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After evaporation of the solvent the crude product was chromatographed on silica gel using 30% ethyl acetate in petroleum ether as the eluent to give 0.75 g of N,O-dimethyl 2(RS)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-3-(3-thienyl)-propionohydroxamate as a white solid; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 1.4 (s,9H), 2.95 (dd,1H), 3.05 (dd,1H), 3.15 (s,3H), 3.65 (s,3H), 4.9 (m,1H), 5.15 (br d,1H), 6.9 (d,1H), 7.0 (d,1H), 7.2 (m,1H).

iii) 0.2 g (0.64 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(RS)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-3-(3-thienyl)propionohydroxamate was dissolved in 10 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled to 0°C. 0.5 ml (0.5 mmol) of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise and the solution was stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the 35 dropwise addition of saturated potassium hydrogen sulphate solution and then 30 ml of diethyl ether were added. The resulting two phase system was stirred vigorously for 1 hour. The organic phase was separated, washed with saturated sodium

hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to give the aldehyde which, without purification, was dissolved in 10 ml of a saturated methanolic hydrogen chloride solution and stirred
5 at room temperature for 2 hours. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the dimethyl acetal was used in the next step without purification.

The dimethyl acetal was dissolved in 40 ml of dichloro-
10 methane and then 0.15 g (0.16 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 0.03 g (0.2 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 0.038 g (0.2 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl-
15 carbodiimide hydrochloride and 0.08 g (0.65 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine were added and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solution was washed with 5% citric acid solution, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over
20 anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the crude product was chromatographed on silica gel using 5% methanol in dichloromethane as the eluent to give 0.07 g of N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-
25 L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)-2-(3-thienyl)ethyl-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 1069 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

Example 15

30 0.08 g (0.07 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-2-(2-thienyl)ethyl]-L-leucinamide was
35 dissolved in 10 ml of dichloromethane/trifluoroacetic acid (1:1) containing 3 drops of water and the solution was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the crude product was chromatographed on silica gel

using dichloromethane:methanol:acetic acid:water (120:15:3:2) as the eluent to give 0.021 g of 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3(2-thienyl)propionaldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 887.4 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

- i) 0.63 g (2.33 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-(2-thienyl)-L-alanine was dissolved in 50 ml of dichloromethane and then 0.34 g (3.48 mmol) of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride, 0.36 g (2.35 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate, 0.67 g (3.49 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 0.40 g (3.47 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine were added. The resulting solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solution was washed with 5% citric acid, then with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate and evaporated to give 0.70 g of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-3-(2-thienyl)propionohydroxamate as a white solid; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 1.4 (s,9H), 3.1 (dd,1H), 3.15 (s,3H), 3.2 (dd,1H), 3.7 (s,3H), 4.9 (br d,1H), 5.8 (m,1H), 6.8 (d,1H), 6.9 (dd,1H), 7.15 (d,1H).
- ii) 0.4 g (1.27 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-3-(2-thienyl)propionohydroxamate was dissolved in 10 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled to 0°C. 0.9 ml (0.9 mmol) of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran was added and the resulting solution stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the dropwise addition of 15 ml of saturated potassium hydrogen sulphate solution and then 30 ml of diethyl ether were added. The resulting two phase system was stirred vigorously for 40 minutes. The organic phase was separated, washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the aldehyde, without further purification, was dissolved in 10 ml of

a saturated methanolic hydrogen chloride solution and stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the dimethyl acetal was used in the next step without purification.

5

The dimethyl acetal was dissolved in 40 ml of dichloromethane and then 0.20 g (0.22 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 0.04 mg (0.26 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 0.05 g (0.26 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 0.10 g (0.87 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine were added. The resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, then washed in sequence with 5% citric acid solution, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the crude product was triturated with diethyl ether to give 0.16 g of N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-2-(2-thienyl)ethyl-L-leucinamide as a white solid. MS: m/e 1069.6 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

25

Example 16

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-cyclohexylglycine there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 883.5 [M+H].

35

Example 17

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-

alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-valine there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid;
5 MS: m/e 843.5 [M+H].

Example 18

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 4, by
10 replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-D-alanine there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-alanyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white
15 solid; MS: m/e 815.4 [M+H].

Example 19

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 4, by
20 replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-D-valine there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid;
25 MS: m/e 843.4 [M+H].

Example 20

0.2 g (0.2 mmol) of N2-[N-[N-[N-(carboxypropionyl)-L-
30 α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)pentyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 12 ml of acetone and 12 ml of 0.1M ammonium acetate in water were added. 0.21 g (1 mmol) of
35 sodium periodate was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for 22 hours. 7 ml of water were then added together with a small amount of sodium periodate. The resulting solution was stirred for a further 5 hours. The

acetone was removed under a vacuum and the aqueous residue was acidified with 2N hydrochloric acid and then extracted with ethyl acetate. Saturated aqueous sodium chloride was added to the aqueous layer which was then extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic extracts were combined, dried over sodium sulphate and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether, filtered off and dried to give 167 mg of 1(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]pentylboronic acid as a white solid; MS: m/e 845.4 [M+H-H₂O]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

- i) In an analogous manner to that described in Example 21 i) and ii), by replacing 3-butenylmagnesium bromide with butylmagnesium bromide there was obtained α -(R)-butyl-3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborole-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1:1) which was used in the next step without further purification.
- ii) 0.25 g (0.27 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 2 ml of dimethylformamide and 4 ml of dichloromethane. 0.15 ml (1.4 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -10°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 45 mg (0.32 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -10°C. 0.2 g (0.54 mmol) of α -(R)-butyl-3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborole-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1.1) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The solution was diluted with dichloromethane, washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and water and dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporation the residue was triturated with diethyl ether and dried. There was obtained 0.227 g of N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-

L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(R)-(3a(S), 4(S),5,6(S), 7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)pentyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 1165.9 [M+H]⁺.

5

iii) 300 mg (0.26 mmol) of N2-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)-4-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 3.5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 3.5 ml of dichloromethane. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 45 minutes, then diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried and then purified by chromatography on silica gel using dichloromethane/methanol/acetic acid/water (170:15:3:2) for the elution. There were obtained 135 mg of N2-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(R)-(3a(S), 4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)-4-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 995.3 [M+H]⁺.

Example 21

25

N2-[N-[N-[N-(3-Carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)-4-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide can be converted into N2-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-pentenylboronic acid in an analogous manner to that described in the first paragraph of Example 20.

35

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 0.5 g (1.9 mmol) of 2-(dichloromethyl)-3a(S),4(S),5,6(S), 7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzo-

dioxaborole was dissolved in 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran and the solution was cooled to -78°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 4.5 ml (2.3 mmol) of 0.5M 3-butenylmagnesium bromide in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise and the resulting solution
5 was stirred for 2 minutes. 3 ml (1.52 mmol) of 0.5M zinc (II) chloride solution were then added and the mixture was stirred for 16 hours while slowly warming to room temperature. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and then washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and brine. The organic phase was dried over
10 sodium sulphate and then evaporated under a vacuum. The residue was purified by chromatography on silica gel using diethyl ether/hexane (1:9) for the elution to give 177 mg of 2-[1(S)-chloro-4-pentenyl]-3a(S)-4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborole. NMR: (CDCl₃)
15 0.83 (s, 3H), 1.15 (d, 1H), 1.30 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 1.85-1.95 (m, 4H), 2.08 (t, 1H), 2.15-2.35 (m, 4H), 3.49 (dd, 1H), 4.35 (dd, 1H), 5.0 (dd, 1H), 5.07 (dd, 1H), 5.78 (m, 1H).

ii) 0.158 g (0.56 mmol) of 2-[1(S)-chloro-4-pentenyl]-
20 (3a(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborole was dissolved in 2 ml of tetrahydrofuran and then cooled to -78°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 0.56 ml (0.56 mmol) of 1M lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise. The solution was then stirred
25 overnight while slowly warming to room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was taken up in diethyl ether. Insoluble material was removed by filtration. The solvent was removed by evaporation, the residue was dissolved in 2 ml of diethyl ether and the solution was cooled to
30 0°C. 0.12 ml (1.7 mmol) of trifluoroacetic acid was added and the solution was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. The solution was evaporated and the residue was co-evaporated with toluene to give 0.0226 g of a-(R)-(3-butenyl)-3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7, 7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborole-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1:1) as an oil which was
35 used in the next step without further purification.

- iii) 0.35 g (0.38 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 2 ml of dimethylformamide and 6 ml of dichloromethane.
- 5 0.21 ml (1.9 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -15°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 66 mg (0.46 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -15°C. 0.2 g (0.53 mmol) of α -(R)-(3-butenyl)-3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-
- 10 hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzoxaborole-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1.1) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The solution was diluted with dichloromethane, washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and water and dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After
- 15 evaporation the residue was triturated with diethyl ether and dried. There was obtained 0.309 g of N²-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(S)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-
- 20 methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)-4-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide as solid which was used without further purification.

- iv) 300 mg (0.26 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -
- 25 glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)-4-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 3.5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 3.5 ml of dichloromethane. The solution was stirred at room temperature
- 30 for 45 minutes, then diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried and then purified by chromatography on silica gel using dichloromethane/methanol/acetic acid/water (170:15:3:2) for the elution. There were obtained 135 mg of N²-
- 35 [N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)-4-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide as a

white solid: MS: m/e 995.3 [M+H]⁺.

Example 22

5 N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-Carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -
glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-
[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-
methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)propyl]-L-leucinamide can
be converted into 1(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -
10 aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-
valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid in a manner analogous to
that described in the first paragraph of Example 20.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

15

i) In an analogous manner to that described in Example 21 i)
and ii), by replacing 3-butenylmagnesium bromide with ethyl-
magnesium bromide there was obtained α (R)-ethyl-3a(R)-ethyl-
3a(S),4,(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-
20 methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborole-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate
(1:1) which was used in the next step without further
purification.

ii) 0.35 g (0.38 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxy-
25 carbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -
glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-valyl]-
L-leucine was dissolved in 3 ml of dimethylformamide and 7 ml
of dichloromethane. 0.2 ml (1.9 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine
was added and the solution was cooled to -10°C under a nitrogen
30 atmosphere. 68 mg (0.53 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were
added and the solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -10°C.
0.18 g (0.53 mmol) of α (R)-ethyl-3a(S)4(S),5,6,(S),7,7a(R)-
hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxo-
borole-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1:1) was added and the
35 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. After
evaporation the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate
and 2M hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with
water and saturated sodium chloride solution and then dried over

anhydrous sodium sulphate. The solution was evaporated and the residue was triturated with diethyl ether, filtered off and dried to give 0.22 g of N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)propyl]-L-leucinamide as a solid which was used without further purification.

iii) 0.22 g (0.19 mmol) of N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(R)-3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a,5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)propyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 5 ml of dichloromethane, the solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and then diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried to give 170 mg of N2-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(R)-(3a(S),4(S),5,6(S),7,7a(R)-hexahydro-3a, 5,5-trimethyl-4,6-methano-1,3,2-benzodioxaborol-2-yl)propyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 969.4 [M+H]⁺.

Example 23

4 g of 0.25 mmol/g 5-[2-[1(RS)-[[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propyl]-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxoborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methyl-N-[α (RS)-(4-methylphenyl)benzyl]valeramide-polystyrene conjugate were swollen in dimethylformamide for 20 minutes and then suspended and agitated in dimethylformamide/piperidine (4.1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained and then suspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/piperidine (4.1) for a further 5 minutes. The resin was then drained and washed five times with dimethylformamide.

The resin was then suspended in a solution of 2.1 g (6 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valine in dimethylformamide and then a mixture of 1.9 g of 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium

5 tetrafluoroborate and 1.3 ml of N-methylmorpholine dissolved in dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 40 minutes the resin was drained and washed five times with dimethylformamide.

10 The resin was resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained and resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then, the residue was drained and washed five times with dimethyl formamide.

15

The resin was then suspended in a solution of 2.4 g (6 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-methylphenyl)-L-alanine in dimethylformamide and a mixture of 1.9 g of 2(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetra-

20 fluoroborate and 1.3 ml of N-methylmorpholine dissolved in dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 40 minutes the resin was drained and washed five times with dimethyl formamide.

25 40 mg of this resin were resuspended in and agitated with 0.7 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained and resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/ piperidine (4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then, the resin was drained and washed five times with

30 dimethylformamide.

The resin was then suspended in 0.5 ml of a 0.2M solution of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid in dimethyl sulphoxide and then 0.5 ml of a mixture of 0.2M

35 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate and 0.4M N-methylmorpholine in dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 1 hour the resin was drained and washed five times with 1 ml of dimethylformamide

The resin was resuspended in and agitated with 0.7 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained and resuspended in and agitated with dimethyl-
5 formamide/piperidine (4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then, the resin was drained and washed five times with 1 ml of dimethylformamide.

The resin was suspended in 0.5 ml of a solution of N-(9-
10 fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L-tyrosine in dimethyl sulphoxide and 0.5 ml of a mixture of 0.2M 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate and 0.4M N-methylmorpholine in dimethylformamide was added. After
agitating for 1 hour the resin was drained and washed five times
15 with 1 ml of dimethylformamide.

The resin was resuspended in and agitated with 0.7 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained and resuspended in and agitated with dimethyl-
20 formamide/piperidine (4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then, the resin was drained and washed five times with 1 ml of dimethylformamide.

The residue was suspended in 0.5 ml of a 0.2M solution of
25 tert-butyl hydrogen succinate in dimethylformamide and then 0.5 ml of 0.2M 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate and 0.4M N-methylmorpholine dissolved in dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for
1 hour the resin was drained and washed five times with 1 ml of
30 dimethylformamide and then twice with 1 ml of dichloromethane.

0.2 ml of dichloromethane was added to the resin which was then treated with 0.7 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/water (19:1) and agitated for 90 minutes. The resin was then filtered
35 off and washed with 0.7 ml of trifluoroacetic acid/water (19:1). The combined trifluoroacetic acid and water solutions were then evaporated in a vacuum centrifuge and the residue was suspended in acetonitrile/water (1:1) and freeze dried. There were obtained

16.8 mg of 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L-tyrosyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid as a white solid; MS m/e 807.4 [M+H-H₂O]⁺.

5

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 25 ml of isobutylene were condensed at -78°C and added to a mixture of 19.4 g (114 mmol) of 3(RS),7-dimethyl-6-octenoic acid and 1 ml of concentrated sulphuric acid in 25 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture was stirred for 24 hours under a dry ice condenser. A further 20 ml of isobutylene were added and the mixture was stirred for 24 hours under a dry ice condenser. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum. The resulting oil was purified by chromatography on silica gel using ethyl acetate/hexane (1:9) for the elution. There were obtained 20.8 g of tert-butyl 3(RS),7-dimethyl-6-octenoate as a colourless oil. ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 0.9 (d, 3H), 1.1-1.3 (m, 3H), 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.6 (s, 3H), 1.65, (s, 3H), 1.8-2.2 (br m, 4H), 5.05, (m, 1H).

ii) 1.5 g (6.64 mmol) of tert-butyl 3(RS),7-dimethyl-6-octenoate were dissolved in a mixture of 10 ml of acetone, 2 ml of water and 2 ml of glacial acetic acid. 2 g (12.6 mmol) of potassium permanganate were added and the resulting mixture was stirred at 30°C for 2 hours. 22 ml of 2M sulphuric acid and 0.8 g (11.3 mmol) of sodium nitrite were added and the organic phase was separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with dichloromethane and the combined organic phases were washed with water, dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum to give 1.55 g of tert-butyl 7-hydroxy-3(RS),7-dimethyl-6-oxo-octenoate as a clear oil; MS: m/e 259 [M+H]⁺.

35

iii) 0.25 g (0.97 mmol) of tert-butyl 7-hydroxy-3(RS),7-dimethyl-6-oxo-octenoate was dissolved in 3 ml of diethyl ether at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 0.36 ml (1.1 mmol) of 3M

methyilmagnesium bromide in diethyl ether was added dropwise and the resulting solution was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours, refluxed for 6 hours and then stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The solution was diluted with ethyl acetate and then
5 extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium chloride solution. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and evaporated under a vacuum. The resulting oil was purified by chromatography on silica gel using ethyl acetate/hexane (1:2) for the elution. There were obtained 118 mg of
10 tert-butyl 6(RS),7-dihydroxy-3(RS),6,7-trimethyl-6-octenoate as a clear oil; MS: m/e 275 [M+H]⁺.

iv) 0.64 g (2.3 mmol) of tert-butyl 6(RS),7-dihydroxy-3-(RS),6,7-trimethyl-6-octenoate was stirred in 3 ml of tetrahydro-
15 furan with 0.5 g (2.5 mmol) of dichloromethyl diisopropoxyborane at room temperature for 16 hours. The resulting mixture was evaporated and the residue was co-evaporated with toluene to give 0.86 g of tert-butyl 5-[2-(dichloromethyl)-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvalerate as an
20 oil which was used in the next step without further purification.

v) 0.86 g (2.3 mmol) of tert-butyl 5-[2-(dichloromethyl)-4(RS), 5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvalerate was dissolved in 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran and the
25 solution was cooled to -78°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 2.6 ml (2.6 mmol) of 1M ethyilmagnesium bromide in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise, the resulting solution was stirred for 16 hours while slowly warming to room temperature and then diluted with ethyl acetate and extracted with 2M hydrochloric
30 acid and brine. The organic phase was dried over sodium sulphate and then evaporated under a vacuum to give 0.83 g of tert-butyl 5-[2-(1(RS)-chloropropyl)-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvalerate as an oil which was used in the next step without purification.

35

vi) 0.82 g (2.27 mmol) of tert-butyl 5-[2-(1(RS)-chloropropyl)-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvalerate was dissolved in 10 ml of tetrahydrofuran and

then cooled to -78°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 2.3 ml (2.3 mmol) of 1M lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise. The solution was then stirred overnight while slowly warming to room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was taken up in diethyl ether. Insoluble material was removed by filtration and the filtrate was cooled to 0°C. 0.52 ml (6.8 mmol) of trifluoroacetic acid was added and the solution was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. The solution was evaporated and the residue was co-evaporated with toluene to give 1 g of tert-butyl 5-[2-(1(RS)-aminopropyl)-4(RS), 5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvalerate as an oil which was used in the next step without purification.

vii) 0.5 g (1.42 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 7 ml of dichloromethane. 0.6 ml (5.7 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -10°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 0.22 ml (1.7 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate was added and the solution was stirred for 7 minutes at -10°C. 1 g (2.13 mmol) of tert-butyl 5-[2-(1(RS)-aminopropyl)-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvalerate was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours, then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid. The organic phase was extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After evaporation the residue was purified by chromatography on silica gel using ethyl acetate/hexane (1:2) for the elution. There was obtained 0.56 g of tert-butyl 5-[2-[1(RS)-[[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propyl]-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvalerate as an oil; MS: m/e 677 [M+H]⁺.

viii) 50 mg (0.074 mmol) of tert-butyl 5-[2-[1(RS)-[[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propyl]-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvalerate were dissolved in 1 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 1 ml of dichloromethane. The solution was stirred at room temperature for

15 minutes and then evaporated under a vacuum. The residue was co-evaporated with toluene to give 46 mg of 5-[2-[1(RS)-[[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propyl]-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvaleric acid as
5 an oil; MS: m/e 621 [M+H]⁺.

ix) 5 g (5.25 mmol) of 4-methylbenzhydrylamine resin were swollen in dimethylformamide and excess solvent was drained from the resin. The resin was then resuspended in dimethyl-
10 formamide containing 3.4 g (5.48 mmol) of 5-[2-[1(RS)-[[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propyl]-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methylvaleric acid and 3 g (8.2 mmol) of 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetra-
methyluronium hexafluorophosphate. Thereto there were added
15 3.0 ml (16.5 mmol) of diisopropylamine. The resulting mixture was agitated for 100 minutes and the resin was then drained and washed three times with dimethylformamide. The resin was then resuspended in dimethylformamide containing 5 ml (54.8 mmol) of acetic anhydride and 11.5 ml (110 mmol) of N-methylmorpho-
20 line. The mixture was agitated for 30 minutes and the resin was then drained. The resin was then resuspended in dimethylformamide containing 5 ml (54.8 mmol) of acetic anhydride and 11.5 ml (110 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine. The mixture was agitated for 30 minutes and the resin was then drained and
25 washed three times with dimethylformamide, twice with ethyl acetate, twice with dichloromethane and twice with diethyl ether and then dried under a vacuum. After drying there was obtained 6 g of 5-[2-[1(RS)-[[N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]-amino]propyl]-4-(RS),5,5-trimethyl-1,3,2-dioxoborolan-4-yl]-
30 3(RS)-methyl-N-[α (RS)-(4-methylphenyl)benzyl]valeramide-polystyrene conjugate as a pale brown solid (0.25 mmol/g loading estimated by quantitation of dibenzofulvene at 301 nM).

Example 24

35

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 5, from N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenyl-

alanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-alaninamide there was obtained 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid as a white solid; MS: m/e 855 [M+H-H₂O].

The starting material was prepared as follows:

- 10 i) A mixture of 1.2 g (4.67 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine, 540 mg (5 mmol) of benzyl alcohol, 675 mg (5 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 1.152 g (6 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 0.031 g (0.25 mmol) of 4-dimethylamino-15 pyridine was stirred in 20 ml of dichloromethane for 1 hour and then a further 610 mg (5 mmol) of 4-dimethylaminopyridine were added. After 4 hours the solution was extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate and evaporated. The oil20 obtained was chromatographed on silica gel using ethyl acetate/petrol (1:6) for the elution to give 1.55 g of N-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester as a colourless oil; MS: m/e 348 [M+H].
- 25 ii) 1.54 g (4.44 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester and 2.53 g (13.32 mmol) of 4-toluenesulphonic acid hydrate were dissolved in 20 ml of acetonitrile and the solution was left to stand at room temperature for 18 hours. The white precipitate formed was filtered off and30 added to a mixture of 867 mg (3.75 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)-3-methyl-L-valine, 557 mg (3.64 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 793 mg (4.14 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 475 mg (4.13 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine in 25 ml of dichloromethane35 and stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The solution was extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation and chromatography on silica gel using

ethyl acetate/petrol (1:3) for the elution gave 1.06 g of N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester as an off-white foam; MS: m/e 461 [M+H].

- 5 iii) 993 mg (2.16 mmol) of N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester and 1.23 g (6.47 mmol) of 4-toluenesulphonic acid hydrate were dissolved in 20 ml of acetonitrile and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was triturated with diethyl ether and filtered off. The solid obtained was added to a mixture of 602 mg (2.16 mmol) of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-2-methyl-L-phenylalanine, 338 mg (2.21 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 576 mg (3 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 345 mg (3 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine in 20 ml of dichloromethane and stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The solution was extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate and evaporated.
- 10 Chromatography of the residue on silica gel using ethyl acetate/petrol (3:7) for the elution gave 990 mg of N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester as a white solid; MS: m/e 622 [M+H].
- 20 iv) 980 mg (1.578 mmol) of N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester and 900 mg (4.73 mmol) of 4-toluenesulphonic acid hydrate were dissolved in 16 ml of acetonitrile and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours.
- 25 The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was triturated with diethyl ether and filtered off. The solid obtained was added to a mixture of 671 mg (1.578 mmol) of N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid, 247 mg (1.614 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, 419 mg (2.19 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 252 mg (2.19 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine in 16 ml of dichloromethane and stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The solution was extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and
- 30
- 35

saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation and chromatography on silica gel using methanol/dichloromethane (1:49) for the elution gave 530 mg of N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-(9-fluorenyl-methoxycarbonyl)-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester as a white solid; MS: m/e 929 [M+H].

v) A solution of 520 mg (0.56 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester in 3 ml of piperidine and 12 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel using firstly ethyl acetate/petrol (1:1) and then methanol/dichloromethane (1:9) for the elution. The resulting amine was added to a solution of 207 mg (0.504 mmol) of N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid, 78 mg (0.51 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and 134 mg (0.7 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane and stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The solution was then extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation, trituration with diethyl ether and filtration gave 440 mg of N-[N-[N-[N-O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester as a white solid; MS: m/e 1101 [M+H].

vi) A solution of 430 mg (0.39 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester in 4 ml of piperidine and 16 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes and then evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel using firstly ethyl acetate/petrol (1:1) and

then methanol/dichloromethane (1:9) for the elution. The amine obtained was added to a solution of 174 mg (1 mmol) of tert-butyl hydrogen succinate, 135 mg (1 mmol) of 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole and 192 mg (1 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride in 15 ml of dichloromethane and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation and chromatography on silica gel using methanol/dichloromethane (1:24) for the elution followed by trituration with diethyl ether gave 240 mg of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester as a white solid; MS: m/e 1035 [M+H].

vii) A solution of 230 mg (0.223 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine benzyl ester in 10 ml of dimethylformamide was hydrogenated over 25 mg of 10% palladium/carbon for 3 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration, the filtrate was evaporated and the residue was trituated with diethyl ether to give 206 mg of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine as a white solid; MS: m/e 944 [M+H].

viii) 163 mg (0.173 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanine were dissolved in 2 ml of dimethylformamide and 4 ml of dichloromethane. 80 mg (0.69 mmol) of N-ethylmorpholine were added and the solution was cooled to -10°C. 26 mg (0.19 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 30 minutes at -10°C. 107 mg (0.345 mmol) of α -(RS)-allyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-

dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate in 1 ml of dichloromethane were added and the mixture was stirred at -10°C for 30 minutes and at room temperature for 3 hours. The solution was extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Evaporation and chromatography on silica gel using methanol/dichloromethane (1:24) for the elution gave 54 mg of N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-alaninamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 1024 [M+H-C₆H₁₂O].

Example 25

15

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 5, from N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide, MS: m/e 1037 [M+H-C₆H₁₂O], there was obtained 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L-α-aspartyl]-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid; MS: m/e 869 [M+H-H₂O].

25

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 5 via the following intermediates:

i) N-[N-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 475 [M+H];

30

ii) N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 636 [M+H];

35

iii) N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 944 [M+H];

iv) N-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 1114 [M+H];

v) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 1049 [M+H]; and

vi) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-L-leucine; MS: m/e 958 [M+H].

Example 26

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 5, from N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-phenylglycyl]-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl-L-leucinamide, MS: m/e 1017 [M+H-C₆H₁₂O], there was obtained 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-phenylglycyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid; MS: m/e 849 [M+H-H₂O].

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 5 via the following intermediates:

- i) N-[N-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)-L-2-phenylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 455 [M+H];
- ii) N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-phenylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 616 [M+H];
- iii) N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-

α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-phenylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 923 [M+H];

iv) N-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-phenylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 1094 [M+H];

v) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-phenylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 1028 [M+H]; and

vi) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-phenylglycyl]-L-leucine; MS: m/e 938 [M+H].

Example 27

20 In an analogous manner to that described in Example 5, from N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl-L-leucinamide, MS: m/e 1023
25 [M+H-C₆H₁₂O], there was obtained 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid; MS: m/e 855 [M+H-H₂O].

30 The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 5 via the following intermediates:

i) N-[N-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 461 [M+H];

35 ii) N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 622 [M+H];

- iii) N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 929 [M+H];
- 5 iv) N-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 1100 [M+H];
- 10 v) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 1034 [M+H]; and
- 15 vi) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucine; MS: m/e 944 [M+H].

20

Example 28

- In an analogous manner to that described in Example 5, from N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenyl-
- 25 alanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-prolinamide, MS: m/e 981 [M+H-C₆H₁₂O], there was obtained 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-prolyl]amino]-3-butenyl-
- 30 boronic acid as a white solid; MS: m/e 813 [M+H-H₂O].

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 5 via the following intermediates:

- 35 i) N-[N-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-proline benzyl ester;

- ii) N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-proline benzyl ester;
- iii) N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-proline benzyl ester;
- iv) N-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-proline benzyl ester;
- v) N-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-propionyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-proline benzyl ester; MS: m/e 992 [M+H]; and
- vi) N-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-propionyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-proline.

Example 29

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 5, from N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-phenylalanyl]-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl-L-leucinamide, MS: m/e 1031 [M+H-C₆H₁₂O], there was obtained 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-phenylalanyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid as a white solid; MS: m/e 863 [M+H-H₂O].

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 5 via the following intermediates:

- i) N-[N-[N-[O-tert-Butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-phenylalanyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester;

ii) N-[N-[N-[N-[O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-phenylalanyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester;

5

iii) N-[N-[N-[N-N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-phenylalanyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS m/e 1042 [M+H]; and

10

iv) N-[N-[N-[N-N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-3-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-phenylalanyl]-L-leucine.

15

Example 30

0.04 g (0.03 mmol) of (E)-N²-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-
20 [1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-pentyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 4 ml of a 1:1 solution of dichloromethane and trifluoroacetic acid containing 3 drops of water. The resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. After removal of the solvent by evaporation and trituration of the residue with diethyl
25 ether there was obtained 0.014 g of (E)-2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-hexenal; MS: m/e 845.7 [M+H]⁺.

30

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 25 g (347 mmol) of trans-2-buten-1-ol were dissolved in 750 ml of anhydrous diethyl ether. 7.25 ml (89.63 mmol) of anhydrous pyridine were added and the resulting solution was
35 cooled to 0°C. 88.25 ml of phosphorus tribromide were added dropwise and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours at 0°C. The reaction was quenched by pouring the solution on to ice. The organic phase was washed with saturated sodium chloride

solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation there was obtained (E)-1-bromo-2-butane which was used in the next step without purification.

5

ii) 3.86 g (168 mmol) of sodium metal were dissolved in 106 ml of anhydrous ethanol. 36.35 g (168 mmol) of diethyl acetamidomalonate dissolved in 225 ml of anhydrous ethanol were added and the mixture was heated under reflux for 10 minutes. 22.66 g (168 mmol) of (E)-1-bromo-2-butene were added dropwise at room temperature and the mixture was stirred overnight and then evaporated to dryness under a vacuum. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 0.1M hydrochloric acid. The organic phase was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and then with saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. The solvent was evaporated to give 40 g of diethyl (E)-2-acetamido-2-(2-butenyl)malonate as a colourless oil; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 1.25 (t, 6H), 1.6 (d, 3H), 2.0 (s, 3H), 2.9 (d, 2H), 4.2 (q, 4H), 5.15 (m, 1H) 5.5 (m, 1H), 6.7 s, 1H).

iii) 39.63 g (146 mmol) of diethyl (E)-2-acetamido-2-(2-butenyl)malonate were dissolved in 200 ml of ethanol and a solution of 19.24 g (481 mmol) of sodium hydroxide in 100 ml of water was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours at 60°C, evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was partitioned between diethyl ether and water. The aqueous phase was acidified with 2M hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate and the solvent was removed by evaporation under a vacuum to give 26.1 g of (E)-2-acetamido-2-(2-butenyl)malonic acid as a white solid which was used in the next step without further purification. ^1H NMR (250 MHz, MeOD) δ : 1.65 (d, 3H), 2.0 (s, 3H), 2.9 (d, 2H), 5.25 (m, 1H), 5.5 (m, 1H).

35

iv) 26.1 g (121 mmol) of (E)-2-acetamido-2-(butenyl)malonic acid were dissolved in 200 ml of toluene. 34 ml (242 mmol) of triethylamine were added and the mixture was heated under

- reflux for 1 hour. The solution was extracted with 1M hydrochloric acid and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic phases were dried over magnesium sulphate and the solvent was removed under a vacuum to give
- 5 18.73 g of (E)-N-acetyl-DL-2-(2-butenyl)glycine as a white solid which was used in the next step without purification. ^1H NMR (250 Hz, MeOD) δ : 1.65 (d, 3H), 2.0 (s, 3H), 2.4 (m, 2H), 4.3 (m, 1H), 5.4 (m, 1H), 5.5 (m, 1H).
- 10 v) 9 g (52.63 mmol) of (E)-N-acetyl-DL-2-(2-butenyl)glycine were dissolved in 100 ml of water and the pH adjusted to 7.5 using ammonia solution. 0.09 g of acylase I extracted from porcine kidney, and 0.042 g (0.3 mmol) of cobalt (II) chloride were added and the mixture was stirred at 37°C overnight. A
- 15 further 0.09 g of acylase I extracted from porcine kidney was added and the pH adjusted to 7.5 using ammonia solution. The mixture was stirred at 37°C overnight and the solution was then heated at 80°C for 30 minutes and was then acidified to pH 1 using 2 M hydrochloric acid. The solvent was removed by evap-
- 20 oration under vacuum and the crude product purified by trituration using ethyl acetate to yield 4.2 g of (E)-L-2-(2-butenyl)-glycine hydrochloride. ^1H NMR (250 MHz, D₂O) δ : 1.7 (d, 3H), 2.6 (m, 2H), 4.0 (m, 1H), 5.35 (m, 1H), 5.7 (m, 1H).
- 25 vi) 2.1 g (12.69 mmol) of (E)-L-(2-butenyl)glycine hydrochloride were suspended in 20 ml of water and 20 ml of dioxan. 8.26 g (98.32 mmol) of sodium hydrogen carbonate and 8.15 g (37.33 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate were added and the resulting solution was stirred for overnight. The solution was
- 30 evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was partitioned between diethyl ether and saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The aqueous phase was acidified with 2M hydrochloric acid while partitioning in ethyl acetate. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate and the
- 35 solvent was removed by evaporation to give 1.34 g of (E)-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-2-(2-butenyl)glycine; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.65 (d, 3H), 2.5 (m, 2H), 4.3 (m, 1H), 5.0 (m, 1H), 5.35 (m, 1H), 5.6 (m, 1H).

vii) 1.34 g (5.85 mmol) of (E)-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-2-(2-butenyl)glycine were dissolved in 50 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and the solution was treated in sequence with 0.80 g (8.20 mmol) of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride, 1.10 g (7.19 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate, 1.57 g (8.22 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 4 ml (22.96 mmol) of ethyldiisopropylamine. The solution obtained was stirred at room temperature overnight, then washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and with saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over magnesium sulphate. Removal of the solvent by evaporation yielded 1.56 g of N,O-dimethyl (E)-2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-hexenohydroxamate as a colourless oil which was used in the next step without purification. ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.65 (d, 3H), 2.3 (m, 2H), 3.15 (s, 3H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 4.7 (m, 1H), 5.1 (d, 1H), 5.35 (m, 1H), 5.5 (m, 1H).

viii) 1.56 g (5.74 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl (E)-2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-hexenohydroxamate were dissolved in 10 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and cooled to 0°C. 4.0 ml of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran were added and the resulting solution was stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the dropwise addition of saturated potassium hydrogen sulphate solution followed by diethyl ether. The resulting two-phase system was stirred vigorously for 3 minutes. The organic phase was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution followed by saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the resulting aldehyde was used without purification.

1 g (4.69 mmol) of the aldehyde was dissolved in a saturated solution of hydrogen chloride in methanol and stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the dimethyl acetal obtained was used without purification.

0.15 mg (0.16 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 0.033 g (0.22 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate, 0.047 g (0.25 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 0.77 g (6.69 mmol) of 4-ethylmorpholine were dissolved in 15 ml of dichloromethane. 0.05 g (0.22 mmol) of the dimethyl acetal dissolved in 5 ml of dichloromethane was added and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The mixture was washed with 5% citric acid solution followed by saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After evaporation of the solvent the crude product was chromatographed on silica gel using 2% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution to give 0.079 g of (E)-N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-pentyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid foam; m/e 1027.9 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

Example 31

0.05 g (0.04 mmol) of (Z)-N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide was dissolved in 4 ml of a 1:1 solution of dichloromethane and trifluoroacetic acid and containing 3 drops of water. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the crude product was triturated using diethyl ether to afford 0.03 g of (Z)-2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-hexenol as a white solid; MS: m/e 845.7 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 25 g (347 mmol) of cis-2-buten-1-ol were dissolved in 750 ml of anhydrous diethyl ether. 7.25 ml of anhydrous pyridine were added and the resulting solution cooled to 0°C. 88.25 ml of phosphorus tribromide was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours at 0°C. The reaction was quenched by pouring the solution onto ice. The organic phase was washed with saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation there was obtained 25.65 g of (Z)-1-bromo-2-butene; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.65 (d, 3H), 3.9 (d, 2H), 5.6 (m, 2H).

ii) 4.37 g (190 mmol) of sodium metal were dissolved in 110 ml of anhydrous ethanol. 41.14 g (189.6 mmol) of diethyl acetamidomalonate dissolved in 270 ml of anhydrous ethanol were added and the mixture was heated under reflux for 10 minutes. 25.65 g (168 mmol) of (Z)-1-bromo-2-butene were added dropwise at room temperature and the mixture was stirred overnight, then evaporated to dryness under vacuum and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 0.1 M hydrochloric acid. The organic phase was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution followed by saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the crude product was chromatographed on silica gel using 66% ethyl acetate in petroleum ether as eluent to obtain 44.69 g of diethyl (Z)-2-acetamido-2-(2-butenyl)malonate as a colourless oil; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.2 (t, 6H), 1.6 (d, 3H), 2.0 (s, 3H), 3.1 (d, 2H), 4.2 (q, 4H), 5.1(m, 1H), 5.6 (m, 1H), 6.7 (s, 1H).

iii) 44.69 g (165 mmol) of diethyl (Z)-2-acetamido-2-(2-butenyl)malonate were dissolved in 230 ml of ethanol and a solution of 21.69 g (542 mmol) of sodium hydroxide in water was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours at 60°C, evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was partitioned between diethyl ether and water. The aqueous phase was acidified using 2M hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate and the solvent removed by evaporation in a vacuum to give 33.5 g of (Z)-2-acetamido-2-(2-butenyl)malonic acid as a

white solid; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, MeOD) δ : 1.6 (d, 3H), 2.0 (s, 3H), 2.85 (d, 2H), 5.25 (m, 1H), 5.6 (m, 1H).

iv) 16.82 g (78.23 mmol) of (Z)-2-acetamido-2-(2-butenyl)-malonic acid were dissolved in 100 ml of toluene. 34 ml (242 mmol) of triethylamine were added and the mixture was heated under reflux for 1 h, then washed with 1M hydrochloric acid and the aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic phases were dried over magnesium sulphate and the solvent was removed under a vacuum to give 9.4 g of (Z)-N-acetyl-DL-2-(2-butenyl)glycine as a white solid; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, MeOD) δ : 1.6 (d, 3H), 2.0 (s, 3H), 2.5 (m, 2H), 4.4 (m, 1H), 5.4 (m, 1H), 5.6 (m, 1H).

v) 9.4 g (54.97 mmol) of (Z)-N-acetyl-DL-2-(2-butenyl)glycine were dissolved in 100 ml of water and the pH was adjusted to 7.8 with ammonia solution. 0.09 g of acylase I extracted from porcine kidney, and 0.042 g (0.3 mmol) of cobalt (II) chloride were added and the resulting reaction mixture was stirred at 37°C overnight. The pH was adjusted to 7.8 using ammonia solution. The mixture was stirred at 37°C overnight and was then heated at 80°C for 30 minutes and was then acidified to pH 1 using 2M hydrochloric acid. The solution was acidified to pH 1 using 2M hydrochloric acid and then heated at 80°C for 30 minutes. The solvent was removed by evaporation under a vacuum and the crude product obtained purified by trituration using ethyl acetate to yield 5.86 g of (Z)-L-2-(2-butenyl)glycine hydrochloride; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, D₂O) δ : 1.6 (d, 3H), 2.7 (t, 2H), 4.1 (t, 1H), 5.3 (m, 1H), 5.8 (m, 1H).

30

vi) 2.9 g (17.52 mmol) of (Z)-L-2-(2-butenyl)glycine hydrochloride were suspended in 25 ml of water and 25 ml of dioxan. 11.4 g (136 mmol) of sodium hydrogencarbonate and 8.49 g (38.94 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate were added and the resulting solution was stirred for 48 hours. The solution was evaporated to dryness under a vacuum and the residue was partitioned between diethyl ether and saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The aqueous phase was acidified

35

using 2M hydrochloric acid whilst being partitioned with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate and the solvent removed by evaporation to give 2.26 g of (Z)-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-2-(2-butenyl)glycine; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.6 (d, 3H), 2.6 (m, 2H), 4.4 (m, 1H), 5.05 (m, 1H), 5.3 (m, 1H), 5.6 (m, 1H).

vii) 2.26 g (9.87 mmol) of (Z)-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-2-(2-butenyl)glycine were dissolved in 50 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran. 1.15 g (11.79 mmol) of N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride, 1.6 g (10.46 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate, 2.27 g (11.88 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 5.8 ml of ethyldiisopropylamine were added and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solution was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution followed by saturated sodium chloride solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate. Removal of the solvent by evaporation yielded 2.46 g of N,O-dimethyl (Z)-2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-hexenohydroxamate as a colourless oil; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.6 (d, 3H), 2.35 (m, 1H), 2.5 (m, 1H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 4.7 (m, 1H), 5.2 (d, 1H), 5.35 (m, 1H), 5.6 (m, 1H).

viii) 1.01 g (3.71 mmol) of N,O-dimethyl (Z)-2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-hexenohydroxamate were dissolved in 10 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and cooled to 0°C. 2.6 ml of a 1M solution of lithium aluminium hydride in tetrahydrofuran were added and the resulting solution was stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction was quenched by the dropwise addition 15 ml of saturated potassium hydrogen sulphate solution followed by 30 ml of diethyl ether. The resulting two-phase system was stirred vigorously for one hour. The organic phase was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution followed by saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the aldehyde was used without further purification. 0.79 g (3.71 mmol) of the aldehyde was dissolved in a saturated solution of hydrogen chloride in 10 ml of methanol and stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the

dimethylacetal obtained was used without purification

0.15 g (0.16 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
5 α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine, 0.033 g (0.22 mmol) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole mono hydrate, 0.047 g (0.25 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 0.77 g (6.69 mmol) of 4-ethylmorpholine were dissolved in 15 ml of dichloromethane.
10 0.05 g (0.22 mmol) of the foregoing dimethyl acetal dissolved in 5 ml of dichloromethane was added and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The solution was washed with 5% citric acid solution followed by saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and saturated sodium chloride
15 solution and then dried over magnesium sulphate. After removal of the solvent by evaporation the crude product was chromatographed on silica gel using 2% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution to give 0.092 g of (Z)-N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-3-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide,
20 as a white solid foam; MS: m/e 1027.9 [M + H - MeOH]⁺.

Example 32

25

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but using N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-(2-furyl)-L-alanine in place of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-allylglycine there was obtained 2(RS)-
[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -
30 glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(2-furyl)propionaldehyde; MS: m/e 871.4 [M+H]⁺.

35

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 10 via the following intermediates:

i) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-2-(2-furyl)-propionohydroxamate; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 1.4 (s, 9H), 3.0 (m, 2H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 4.9 (m, 1H), 5.3 (br. d, 1H), 6.1 (br. s, 1H), 6.3 (br. s, 1H), 7.3 (br. s, 1H).

- ii) N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[2-(2-furyl)-1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)ethyl]-L-leucinamide; used directly in the next step.

Example 33

- 10 In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but using N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-norvaline in place of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-allylglycine there was obtained 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-
15 valeraldehyde; MS: m/e 833.4 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 10 via the following intermediates:

- 20 N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)valerohydroxamate; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 0.8 (m, 3H), 1.2-1.7 (m, 4H), 1.4 (s, 9H), 3.1 (s, 3H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 4.6 (m, 1H), 5.1 (br. d, 1H).

- 25 N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-butyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1069.6 [M+Na]⁺.

Example 34

- 30 In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but using N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-butylglycine in place of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-allylglycine there was obtained 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-
35 hexanal; MS: m/e 847.4 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in example 10 via the following intermediates:

- 5 i) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)hexanohydroxamate; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 0.9 (m, 3H), 1.2-1.8 (m, 6H), 1.4 (s, 9H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 4.6 (m, 1H), 5.1 (br. d, 1H).
- 10 ii) N2-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-pentyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1083 $[\text{M} + \text{Na}]^+$.

Example 35

- 15 In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but using DL-hexylglycine in place of L-allylglycine hydrochloride there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]octanal; MS: m/e 875.5 $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$.

20

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 10 via the following intermediates:

- 25 i) 2(RS)-(tert-Butoxyformamido)octanoic acid; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 0.9 (m, 3H), 1.2-1.9 (m, 10H), 1.4 (s, 9H), 4.3 (m, 1H), 5.0 (br. d, 1H)
- 30 ii) N,O-Dimethyl 2(RS)-(tert-butoxyformamido)octanohydroxamate; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 0.9 (m, 3H), 1.2-1.8 (m, 10H), 1.4 (s, 9H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.7 (s, 3H) 4.6 (m, 1H), 5.1 (br. d, 1H)
- 35 iii) N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(RS)-(dimethoxymethyl)-heptyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1111.6 $[\text{M} + \text{Na}]^+$.

Example 36

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but using 2(S)-amino-5-methylhexanoic acid in place of L-allyl-glycine hydrochloride there was obtained 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-5-methylhexanal; MS: m/e 861.3 [M+H]⁺

10 The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 10 via the following intermediates:

- i) 2(S)-(tert-Butoxyformamido)-5-methylhexanoic acid; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 0.9 (d, 6H), 1.2 (m, 2H), 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.5 (m, 1H), 1.7 (m, 1H), 1.9 (m, 1H), 4.3 (m, 1H), 4.9 (br. d, 1H).
- 15 ii) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-5-methylhexanohydroxamate; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 0.85 (d, 3H), 0.9 (d, 3H), 1.2 (m, 2H), 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.4-1.8 (m, 3H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.8 (s, 20 3H), 4.6 (m, 1H), 5.1 (br. d, 1H).
- iii) N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-4-25 methylpentyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1043.8 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

Example 37

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but using 2(S)-amino-5-hexenoic acid in place of L-allylglycine hydrochloride there was obtained 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-5-hexenal; MS: m/e 845.3 [M+H]⁺.

35

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 10 via the following intermediates:

- i) 2(S)-tert-Butoxyformamido)-5-hexenoic acid; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.8 (m, 1H), 1.95 (m, 1H), 2.2 (m, 2H), 4.3 (m, 1H), 5.0 (m, 3H), 5.8 (m, 1H).
- 5 ii) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-5-hexeno-hydroxamate; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.4(s, 9H), 1.6-1.8 (m, 2H), 2.1 (m, 2H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.7 (s, 3H) 4.7 (m, 1H), 5.0 (m, 3H), 5.8 (m, 1H).
- 10 iii) N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-4-pentenyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1081.6 [M + Na]⁺.

15

Example 38

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but using 2(S)-amino-5-hexynoic acid in place of L-allylglycine hydrochloride there was obtained 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-carboxypropionyl)-L-α-aspartyl]-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-5-hexynal; MS: m/e 843.3 [M+H]⁺.

20

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 10 via the following intermediates:

25

- i) 2(S)-(tert-Butoxyformamido)-5-hexynoic acid; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, MeOD) δ: 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.8 (m, 1H), 2.0 (m, 1H), 2.3 (m, 3H), 4.2 (m, 1H).
- 30 ii) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-5-hexyno-hydroxamate; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, MeOD) δ: 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.7 (m, 1H), 1.9 (m, 1H), 2.3 (m, 3H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 4.7 (m, 1H)
- 35 iii) N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-4-pentynyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1079.5 [M+Na]⁺

Example 39

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but
5 using N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-methionine in place of N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-allylglycine there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-(methylthio)butyraldehyde; MS: m/e 865.3 [M+H]⁺.

10

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 10 via the following intermediates:

- i) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-4-(methyl-
15 thio)butyroxamate; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.75 (m, 1H), 2.0 (m, 1H), 2.05 (s, 3H), 2.5 (m, 2H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 4.7 (m, 1H), 5.2 (m, 1H).
- ii) N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)-2-(methylthio)propyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1047.5 [M+H-MeOH]⁺.

20

Example 40

25

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 10, but using S-(3-phenylpropyl)-L-cysteine in place of L-allylglycine hydrochloride there was obtained 2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-2-[3-(phenyl)propylthio]propionaldehyde; MS: m/e 955.4 [M+H]⁺.

30

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 10 via the following intermediates:

35

- i) N-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)-S-(3-phenylpropyl)-L-cysteine; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.9 (m, 2H), 2.55 (t, 2H), 2.7 (t, 2H), 3.0 (m, 2H), 4.5 (m, 1H), 5.4 (m, 1H), 7.2 (m, 5H).

ii) N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-3-(3-phenylpropylthio)propionohydroxamate; ¹H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.4 (s, 9H), 1.9 (m, 2H), 2.5 (t, 2H), 2.7 (t, 2H), 2.8 (m, 2H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 4.8 (m, 1H), 5.3 (m, 1H), 7.2 (m, 5H).

iii) N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(R)-(dimethoxymethyl)-2-(3-phenylpropylthio)ethyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 1191.8 [M+Na]⁺.

Example 41

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 1, but using N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)hexanohydroxamate in place of N,O-Dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)butyrohdroxamate and N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-D-valine in place of N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L-α-glutamic acid there was obtained 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L-α-aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]hexanal; MS: m/e 817.4 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 1 via the following intermediates:

i) N-[N-[N-[N-[(9-Fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 817.4 [M+H]⁺.

ii) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[(9-Fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 988.4 [M+H]⁺.

iii) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-α-aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 922.5 [M+H]⁺.

iv) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine; MS: m/e 832.5 [M+H]⁺.

- 5 v) N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)pentyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 997.5 [M+Na]⁺.

10

Example 42

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 1, but using N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)hexanohydroxamate in place of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-
15 butyrohdroxamate, using N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-D-valine in place of N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid and using O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)-methoxycarbonyl]-L-serine in place of N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid there was obtained
20 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L-seryl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-hexanal; MS: m/e 789.3 [M+H]⁺.

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner
25 to that described in Example 1 via the following intermediates:

- i) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[(9-Fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-seryl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 960.4 [M+H]⁺.
30
ii) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-seryl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 894.5 [M+H]⁺.
35
iii) N-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-seryl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine; MS: m/e 804.4 [M+H]⁺.

iv) N²-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-seryl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)pentyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 969.7 [M+Na]⁺.

5

Example 43

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 1, but using N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)hexanohydroxamate in place of N,O-dimethyl 2(S)-(tert-butoxyformamido)-butyrophydroxamate using N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-D-valine in place of N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid, using O-tert-butyl-N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-serine in place of N-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid and using acetic anhydride in place of tert-butyl hydrogen succinate there was obtained 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(N-acetyl-L-seryl)-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]hexanal; MS: m/e 731.3 [M+H]⁺.

20

The starting material was prepared in an analogous manner to that described in Example 1 via the following intermediates:

i) N-[N-[N-[N-(N-acetyl-O-tert-butyl-L-seryl)-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine; MS: m/e 690.4 [M+H]⁺.

ii) N²-[N-[N-[N-(N-acetyl-O-tert-butyl-L-seryl)-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(S)-(dimethoxymethyl)pentyl]-L-leucinamide; MS: m/e 833.5 [M+H]⁺.

30

The reaction with acetic anhydride was carried out as follows:

0.5ml of N-ethylmorpholine and 0.37 ml of acetic anhydride were added in sequence to a solution of 1.95 g of N-[N-[N-[N-(O-tert-butyl-L-seryl)-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine benzyl ester in 70 ml of anhydrous

35

dichloromethane. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and was then washed in sequence with 5% aqueous citric acid solution, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and saturated brine. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate and evaporated. Chromatography of the residue on silica using 5% methanol in dichloromethane for the elution gave 1.45 g of N-[N-[N-(N-acetyl-O-tert-butyl-L-seryl)-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl-L-leucine benzyl ester; MS: m/e 780.6 [M+H]⁺.

10

Example 44

59 mg (0.058 mmol) of N1-[4-bromo-1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)butyl]-N2-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 3 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 3 ml of dichloromethane. 5 drops of water were added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The solution was diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried and then redissolved in 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 5 ml of dichloromethane. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and then diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the solid obtained was filtered off and dried to give 30 mg of 4-bromo-1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]butylboronic acid in the form of a solid; MS: m/e 911.3 [M+H-H₂O]⁺.

30

The starting material was prepared as follows:

i) 1.7 ml (1.7 mmol) of 1M lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise to a solution of 0.5 g (1.7 mmol) of 2-(4-bromo-1(RS)-chlorobutyl)-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane (prepared according to EP-A-O 293 881) in 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran under nitrogen at -78°C.

35

The solution was then stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was taken up in diethyl ether. Insoluble material was removed by filtration and the solvent was removed by evaporation to give 0.63 g of product which was immediately redissolved in diethyl ether and cooled to 0°C. 0.34 ml 0.34 ml (5.0 mmol) of trifluoroacetic acid was added and the solution was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. The solution was evaporated and the residue was evaporated with toluene to give 0.58 g of α -(RS)-3-bromopropyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1:1) as a brown oil which was used in the next step without purification.

ii) 0.20 g (0.22 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 2 ml of dimethylformamide and 6 ml of dichloromethane. 0.2 ml (1.52 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -10°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 44 mg (0.3 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 15 minutes at -10°C. 0.3 g (0.66 mmol) of α -(RS)-3-bromopropyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1:1) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. Dichloromethane was added and the solution was extracted with 2M hydrochloric acid and water and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporation there was obtained 0.122 g of N²-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[4-bromo-1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)butyl]-L-leucinamide in the form of a solid; MS: m/e 1079.5 [M+H-100]⁺.

iii) 115 mg (0.098 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[4-bromo-1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)butyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 3 ml of trifluoroacetic

acid and 3 ml of dichloromethane. 5 drops of water were added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The solution was diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with ether and the resulting solid was
5 filtered off and dried to give 72 mg of N1-[4-bromo-1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)butyl]-N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-methyl-valyl]-L-leucinamide as a white solid; MS: m/e 911.3 [M+H-100]⁺

10

Example 45

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 23, but replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-
15 tyrosine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-aspartic acid and replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycine there was obtained 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-
20 phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid as a white solid; MS: m/e 843.4 [M+H-H₂O]⁺.

Example 46

25 In an analogous manner to that described in Example 23, but replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-tyrosine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L-aspartic acid and replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-
30 L-2-cyclohexylglycine there was obtained 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid as a white solid; MS: m/e 795.5 [M+H-H₂O]⁺.

35

Example 47

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-

fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanine there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-3-cyclohexyl-L-alanyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as
5 a white solid; MS m/e 897.6 [M+H].

Example 48

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-
10 fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-
fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-D-valine and replacing N-[(9-
fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-t-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid with N-
[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-t-butyl-L-serine there was
obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L-seryl]-D-
15 valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-
amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e
815.5 [M+H].

Example 49

20

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-
fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with [(9-
fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-D-norleucine there was obtained
2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-
25 norleucyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-
leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS:
m/e 857.4 [M+H].

Example 50

30

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-
fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-
fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-D-norvaline there was obtained
2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-
35 norvalyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-
amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e
843.4 [M+H].

Example 51

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-D-2-cyclohexylglycine there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid, MS: m/e 897.4 [M+H].

10

Example 52

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-4-nitro-D-phenylalanine there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-4-nitro-D-phenylalanyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 936.3 [M+H].

20

Example 53

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycine and by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 899.5 [M+H].

30

Example 54

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-methylphenyl)-L-alanine with N-[(9-methoxycarbonyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycine and by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-

35

fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-t-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 851.4 [M+H].

Example 55

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-t-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid and by replacing tert-butyl hydrogen succinate with 3-acetamidobenzoic acid there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-acetamidobenzoyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 934.4 [M+H].

Example 56

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-t-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid and by replacing tert-butyl hydrogen succinate with 4-acetamido-3-nitrobenzoic acid there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(4-acetamido-3-nitrobenzoyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 979.4 [M+H].

Example 57

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid and by replacing tert-butyl hydrogen succinate with 4-acetamidobenzoic acid there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(4-acetamidobenzoyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 934.4 [M+H].

Example 58

In an analogous manner to Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-
5 fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-
fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-L- α -glutamic acid and by
replacing tert-butyl hydrogen succinate with 3,5-dichlorobenzoic
acid there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3,5-dichloro-
benzoyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-
10 3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde
as a white solid; MS: m/e 945.3 [M+H].

Example 59

15 0.78 g of 0.235 mmol/g 5-[2-[1(RS)-[[N-[(9-fluorenyl)-
methoxycarbonyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propyl]-4(RS),5,5-trimethyl-
1,3,2-dioxaborolan-4-yl]-3(RS)-methyl-N-[α (RS)-(4-methyl-
phenyl)benzyl]valeramide-polystyrene conjugate was swollen in
dimethylformamide for 20 minutes and then suspended and
20 agitated in dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes
the resin was drained and then resuspended in and agitated with
dimethylformamide/ piperidine (4:1) for a further five minutes.
The resin was then drained and washed five times with dimethyl-
formamide.

25

The resin was then suspended in a solution of 0.4 g, 1.08
mmol of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-methyl-L-valine in
dimethylformamide and then a mixture of 0.42 g (1.08 mmol) 2-
(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoro-
30 borate and 0.25 ml (2.2 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine dissolved in
dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 40 minutes
the resin was drained and washed five times with dimethylform-
amide.

35

The resin was resuspended in and agitated with dimethyl-
formamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was
drained, resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/
piperidine (4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then the resin was

drained and washed five times with dimethyl formamide.

The resin was then suspended in a solution of 0.44 g (1.08 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-methyl-phenyl)-L-alanine in dimethylformamide and then a mixture of 0.42g 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate and 0.25 ml (2.2 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine dissolved in dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 40 minutes the resin was drained and washed five times with dimethylformamide.

The resin was resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained, resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then the resin was drained and washed five times with dimethyl formamide.

The resin was then suspended in a solution of 0.37 g (1.08 mmol) of N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-D-valine in dimethylformamide and then a mixture of 0.42 g of 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate and 0.25 ml (2.2 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine dissolved in dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 40 minutes the resin was drained and washed five times with dimethylformamide.

The resin was resuspended in and agitated with 0.7 ml of dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1). After 5 minutes the resin was drained, resuspended in and agitated with dimethylformamide/piperidine (4:1) for a further 5 minutes. Then, the resin was drained and washed five times with 1 ml of dimethylformamide.

98 mg of this resin were then suspended in a solution of 0.06 g (0.19 mmol) of N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid in dimethylformamide and then a mixture of 0.06 g (0.19 mmol) of 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate and 0.1 ml (0.88 mmol) of N-methyl-

morpholine dissolved in dimethylformamide was added. After agitating for 40 minutes the resin was drained and washed three times with dimethylformamide, three times with ethyl acetate and three times with dichloromethane.

5

1 ml of dichloromethane was added to the resin which was then treated with 3 ml of a 9:1 mixture of trifluoroacetic acid and water and then agitated for 30 minutes. The resin was then filtered off and washed with dichloromethane. The filtrate and washings were combined and evaporated and then co-evaporated with toluene. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and dried. There were obtained 12 mg of 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid; MS: m/e 821.4 [M+H-H₂O]⁺.

Example 60

200 mg (0.18 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[4-fluoro-1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)butyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 4.75 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 0.25 ml of water. 2 ml of dichloromethane were added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The solution was diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried to give 95 mg of 4-fluoro-1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]-amino]butylboronic acid; MS: m/e 849.4 [M+H-H₂O]⁺

The starting material was prepared as follows:

35 i) 2.5 ml (25 mmol) of borane-dimethyl sulphide (1:1) complex were dissolved in 50 ml of dimethoxyethane and the solution was cooled to 0°C under nitrogen. 5.3 ml (52.5 mmol) of cyclohexene were then added. The solution was stirred at 0°C

for 15 minutes, then at room temperature for 1 hour and then cooled to -10°C . 1.6 g (27 mmol) of 3-fluoropropene were condensed and then added to the foregoing solution which was then stirred at room temperature under a dry ice condenser.

5 After 1 hour the condenser was removed and stirring was continued for a further 1 hour. 3.9 g (52 mmol) of trimethylamine N-oxide were added and the solution was stirred for 1 hour. 3.1 g (26.3 mmol) of 2,3-dimethyl-2,3-butanediol were added and the solution was stirred for 16 hours. The solution
10 was evaporated and the residue was distilled. The distillate boiling at $35-65^{\circ}\text{C}/1\text{mm Hg}$ was collected and purified by chromatography on silica gel using diethyl ether/ hexane (1:9) for the elution to give 1.67 g of 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-(3-fluoropropyl)-1,3,2-dioxaborolane as a colourless oil; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 0.75-0.85 (m, 2H), 1.25 (s, 12H), 1.7-1.9 (m, 2H), 4.28 (t, 1H), 4.48 (t, 1H).

ii) 1.3 ml (8.8 mmol) of diisopropylamine and 5.5 ml (8.8 mmol) of butyllithium in hexane were added to 7 ml of
20 tetrahydrofuran at -78°C . The cooled solution was added to a solution of 1.65 g (8.8 mmol) of 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-(3-fluoropropyl)-1,3,2-dioxaborolane in 0.7 ml of dichloromethane, 15 ml of cyclohexane and 8 ml of tetrahydrofuran at -20°C under nitrogen. The solution was then stirred for 16 hours while slowly
25 warming to room temperature. The solution was partitioned between 2M hydrochloric acid, brine and ethyl acetate, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic extracts were combined, washed with brine and dried over sodium sulphate. After evaporation the residue was purified by
30 chromatography on silica gel using diethyl ether/hexane (1:9) for the elution to give 1.0 g of 2-(4-fluoro-1(RS)-chlorobutyl)-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane as a colourless oil; ^1H NMR (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 0.75-0.85 (m, 2H), 1.3 (s, 12H), 1.9-2.1 (m, 2H), 3.45 (m, 1H) 4.35 (m, 1H), 4.55 (m, 1H).

35 iii) 4.2 ml (4.2 mmol) of 1M lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise to a solution of 1.0 g (4.2 mmol) of 2-(4-fluoro-1(RS)-chlorobutyl)-4,4,5,5-tetra-

methyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane in 7 ml of tetrahydrofuran under nitrogen at -78°C. The solution was then stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent was removed by evaporation and the residue was taken up in diethyl ether. Insoluble material was removed by filtration and the solvent was removed by evaporation to give 1.53 g of material which was immediately redissolved in 7 ml of diethyl ether and cooled to 0°C. 0.95 ml (12.6 mmol) of trifluoroacetic acid was added and the solution was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. The solution was evaporated and the residue was evaporated with toluene to give 1.36 g of α (RS)-3-fluoropropyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1:1) as a brown oil which was used in the next step without further purification.

iv) 0.20 g (0.22 mmol) N-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 2 ml of dimethylformamide and 4 ml of dichloromethane. 0.2 ml (1.52 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -10°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 40 mg (0.27 mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -10°C. 0.2 g (0.44 mmol) of α (RS)-3-fluoropropyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1:1) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. Dichloromethane was added and the solution was washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and water and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporation there was obtained 0.21 g of N²-[N-[N-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[4-fluoro-1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)butyl]-L-leucinamide in the form of a solid; MS: m/e 1017.3 [M+H-100]⁺.

35

Example 61

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-

alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid and by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-4-chloro-L-phenylalanine there was obtained 2(RS)-
5 [[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 893.3 [M+H].

10

Example 62

In an analogous manner to that described in Example 4, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanine with N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamic acid, by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-O-
15 tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid with N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartic acid and by omitting the reaction with tert-butyl succinate there was obtained 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-
20 phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde as a white solid; MS: m/e 907.4 [M+H].

Example 63

25 88 mg (0.09 mmol) of N2-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N1-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 5 ml of dichloro-
30 methane. 5 drops of water were added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The solution was diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried to give 72 mg of 1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxy-
35 propionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid; MS: m/e 863 [M+H-H₂O]⁺.

The starting material was prepared as follows:

- i) In an analogous manner to Example 1 iii)-x), by replacing N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanine with
5 N-[(9-fluorenyl)methoxycarbonyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanine there was obtained N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine as a white solid; MS: m/e 952 [M+H]⁺.
- 10 ii) 0.18 g (0.19 mmol) of N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucine was dissolved in 2 ml of dimethylformamide and
15 5 ml of dichloromethane. 0.1 ml (0.94 mmol) of N-methylmorpholine was added and the solution was cooled to -15°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 35 mg (0.25 mmol) of isobutylchloroformate were added and the solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -10°C. 0.12 g (0.38 mmol) α (RS)-allyl-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-
20 1,3,2-dioxaborolane-2-methylamine trifluoroacetate (1:1) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solution was diluted with dichloromethane, washed with 2M hydrochloric acid and water and dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporation there was obtained 0.18 g of
25 N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-[3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide in the form of a white solid; MS: m/e 1131.6 [M+H]⁺.
- 30 iii) 166 mg (0.147 mmol) of N²-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)propionyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -aspartyl]-O-tert-butyl-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxoborolan-2-yl)-
35 3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide were dissolved in 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 5 ml of dichloromethane. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, then diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue was triturated with ether

and the resulting solid was filtered off, dried and then redissolved in 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 5 ml of dichloromethane. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, diluted with toluene and evaporated. The residue
5 was triturated with diethyl ether and the resulting solid was filtered off and dried to give 100 mg of N²-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-N¹-[1(RS)-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-3-butenyl]-L-leucinamide
10 as a white solid; MS: m/e 863 [M+H-100]⁺.

The following Examples illustrate pharmaceutical preparations containing compounds of formula I:

15

Example A

Tablets containing the following ingredients may be produced in a conventional manner:

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Per tablet</u>
Compound of formula I	10.0 mg
Lactose	125.0 mg
Corn starch	75.0 mg
Talc	4.0 mg
Magnesium stearate	<u>1.0 mg</u>
Total weight	<u>215.0 mg</u>

20

Example B

Capsules containing the following ingredients may be produced in a conventional manner:

5

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Per capsule</u>
Compound of formula I	10.0 mg
Lactose	165.0 mg
Corn starch	20.0 mg
Talc	<u>5.0 mg</u>
Capsule fill weight	<u>200.0 mg</u>

Figure 1 - Nucleotide sequence of pMAL -NS3''Gly12
NS4A plasmid

```
      1 CCGACACCAT CGAATGGTGC AAAACCTTTC GCGGTATGGC
5  ATGATAGCGC

      51 CCGGAAGAGA GTCAATTCAG GGTGGTGAAT GTGAAACCAG
      TAACGTTATA

10      101 CGATGTCGCA GAGTATGCCG GTGTCTCTTA TCAGACCGTT
      TCCCGCGTGG

      151 TGAACCAGGC CAGCCACGTT TCTGCGAAAA CGCGGGAAAA
15  AGTGGAAGCG

      201 GCGATGGCGG AGCTGAATTA CATTCCCAAC CGCGTGGCAC
      AACAACTGGC

      251 GGGCAAACAG TCGTTGCTGA TTGGCGTTGC CACCTCCAGT
20  CTGGCCCTGC

      301 ACGCGCCGTC GCAAATTGTC GCGGCGATTA AATCTCGCGC
      CGATCAACTG

25      351 GGTGCCAGCG TGGTGGTGTG GATGGTAGAA CGAAGCGGCG
      TCGAAGCCTG

      401 TAAAGCGGCG GTGCACAATC TTCTCGCGCA ACGCGTCAGT
30  GGGCTGATCA

      451 TTA ACTATCC GCTGGATGAC CAGGATGCCA TTGCTGTGGA
      AGCTGCCTGC

      501 ACTAATGTTC CGGCGTTATT TCTTGATGTC TCTGACCAGA
35  CACCCATCAA

      551 CAGTATTATT TTCTCCCATG AAGACGGTAC GCGACTGGGC
      GTGGAGCATC

40      601 TGGTCGCATT GGGTCACCAG CAAATCGCGC TGTTAGCGGG
      CCCATTAAGT

      651 TCTGTCTCGG CGCGTCTGCG TCTGGCTGGC TGGCATAAAT
45  ATCTCACTCG

      701 CAATCAAATT CAGCCGATAG CGGAACGGGA AGGCGACTGG
      AGTGCCATGT

      751 CCGGTTTTCA ACAAACCATG CAAATGCTGA ATGAGGGCAT
50  CGTTCCCACT

      801 GCGATGCTGG TTGCCAACGA TCAGATGGCG CTGGGCGCAA
      TGCGCGCCAT

55      851 TACCGAGTCC GGGCTGCGCG TTGGTGCGGA TATCTCGGTA
      GTGGGATACG
```

901 ACGATACCGA AGACAGCTCA TGTTATATCC CGCCGTTAAC
CACCATCAAA

5 951 CAGGATTTTC GCCTGCTGGG GCAAACCAGC GTGGACCGCT
TGCTGCAACT

1001 CTCTCAGGGC CAGGCGGTGA AGGGCAATCA GCTGTTGCCC
GTCTCACTGG

10 1051 TGAAAAGAAA AACCACCCTG GCGCCCAATA CGCAAACCGC
CTCTCCCCGC

1101 GCGTTGGCCG ATTCATTAAT GCAGCTGGCA CGACAGGTTT
CCCGACTGGA

15 1151 AAGCGGGCAG TGAGCGCAAC GCAATTAATG TGAGTTAGCT
CACTCATTAG

1201 GCACAATTCT CATGTTTGAC AGCTTATCAT CGACTGCACG
20 GTGCACCAAT

1251 GCTTCTGGCG TCAGGCAGCC ATCGGAAGCT GTGGTATGGC
TGTGCAGGTC

25 1301 GTAAATCACT GCATAATTCG TGTCGCTCAA GGCGCACTCC
CGTTCTGGAT

1351 AATGTTTTTT GCGCCGACAT CATAACGGTT CTGGCAAATA
TTCTGAAATG

30 1401 AGCTGTTGAC AATTAATCAT CGGCTCGTAT AATGTGTGGA
ATTGTGAGCG

1451 GATAACAATT TCACACAGGA AACAGCCAGT CCGTTTAGGT
35 GTTTTCACGA

1501 GCACTTCACC AACAAGGACC ATAGATTATG AAAACTGAAG
AAGGTAAACT

40 1551 GGTAATCTGG ATTAACGGCG ATAAAGGCTA TAACGGTCTC
GCTGAAGTCG

1601 GTAAGAAATT CGAGAAAGAT ACCGGAATTA AAGTCACCGT
TGAGCATCCG

45 1651 GATAAACTGG AAGAGAAATT CCCACAGGTT GCGGCAACTG
GCGATGGCCC

1701 TGACATTATC TTCTGGGCAC ACGACCGCTT TGGTGGCTAC
50 GCTCAATCTG

1751 GCCTGTTGGC TGAAATCACC CCGGACAAAG CGTTCCAGGA
CAAGCTGTAT

55 1801 CCGTTTACCT GGGATGCCGT ACGTTACAAC GGCAAGCTGA
TTGCTTACCC

1851 GATCGCTGTT GAAGCGTTAT CGCTGATTTA TAACAAAGAT
CTGCTGCCGA

1901 ACCCGCCAAA AACCTGGGAA GAGATCCCGG CGCTGGATAA
5 AGAACTGAAA

1951 GCGAAAGGTA AGAGCGCGCT GATGTTCAAC CTGCAAGAAC
CGTACTTCAC

2001 CTGGCCGCTG ATTGCTGCTG ACGGGGGTTA TGCGTTCAAG
10 TATGAAAACG

2051 GCAAGTACGA CATTAAAGAC GTGGGCGTGG ATAACGCTGG
CGCGAAAGCG

2101 GGTCTGACCT TCCTGGTTGA CCTGATTAAA AACAAACACA
15 TGAATGCAGA

2151 CACCGATTAC TCCATCGCAG AAGCTGCCTT TAATAAAGGC
20 GAAACAGCGA

2201 TGACCATCAA CGGCCCGTGG GCATGGTCCA ACATCGACAC
CAGCAAAGTG

2251 AATTATGGTG TAACGGTACT GCCGACCTTC AAGGGTCAAC
25 CATCCAAACC

2301 GTTCGTTGGC GTGCTGAGCG CAGGTATTAA CGCCGCCAGT
CCGAACAAAG

2351 AGCTGGCAAAG AGAGTTCCTC GAAAACTATC TGCTGACTGA
30 TGAAGGTCTG

2401 GAAGCGGTTA ATAAAGACAA ACCGCTGGGT GCCGTAGCGC
35 TGAAGTCTTA

2451 CGAGGAAGAG TTGGCGAAAG ATCCACGTAT TGCCGCCACC
ATGGAAAACG

2501 CCCAGAAAGG TGAAATCATG CCGAACATCC CGCAGATGTC
40 CGCTTTCTGG

2551 TATGCCGTGC GTACTGCGGT GATCAACGCC GCCAGCGGTC
GTCAGACTGT

2601 CGATGAAGCC CTGAAAGACG CGCAGACTAA TTCGAGCTCG
45 AACAACAACA

2651 ACAATAACAA TAACAACAAC CTCGGGATCG AGGGAAGGAT
50 TTCAGAAATTC

EcoRI

2701 ATGGGGAGGG AGATACATCT GGGACCGGCA GACAGCCTTG
AAGGGCAGGG

NS2/3 (

2751 GTGGCGACTC CTCGCGCATA TTACGGCCTA CTCTCAACAG
55 ACGCGGGGCC

2801 TACTTGGCTG CATCATCACT AGCCTCACAG GCCGGGACAG
GAACCAGGTC

2851 GAGGGGGAGG TCCAAATGGT CTCCACCGCA ACACAATCTT
5 TCCTGGCGAC

2901 CTGCGTCAAT GCGGTGTGTT GGACTGTCTA TCATGGTGCC
GGCTCAAAGA

2951 CCCTTGCCGG CCCAAAGGGC CCAATCACCC AAATGTACAC
10 CAATGTGGAC

3001 CAGGACCTCG TCGGCTGGCA AGCGCCCCC GGGGCGCGCT
CCTTGACACC
15

3051 ATGCACCTGC GGCAGCTCAG ACCTTTACTT GGTCACGAGG
CATGCCGATG

3101 TCATTCCGGT GCGCCGGCGG GGCGACAGCA GGGGAAGCCT
20 ACTCTCCCC

3151 AGGCCCCGTCT CCTACTTGAA GGGCTCTTCG GGCGGTCCAC
TGCTCTGCCC

3201 CTCGGGGCAC GCTGTGGGCA TCTTCCGGGC TGCCGTGTGC
25 ACCCGAGGGG

3251 TTGCGAAGGC GGTGGACTTT GTACCCGTCG AGTCTATGGA
AACCACTATG
30

3301 CGGTCCCCGG TCTTCACGGA CAACTCGTCC CCTCCGGCCG
TATGCATGGG

Eag I

linker (
35 3351 AGGAGGAGGA GGAGGAGGAG GAGGAGGAGG AGGATCCATG
AGCACCTGGG

BamHI

NS4A (
40 3401 TGCTAGTAGG CGGAGTCCTA GCAGCTCTGG CCGCGTATTG
CCTGACAACA

3451 GGCAGCGTGG TCATTGTGGG CAGGATCGTC TTGTCCGGAA
AGCCGGCCAT

3501 CATTCCCGAC AGGGAAGTCC TCTACCGGGA GTTCGATGAG
45 ATGGAAGAGT

3551 GCTAGAAGCT TGGCACTGGC CGTCGTTTTC CAACGTCGTG
ACTGGGAAAA
50

End HindIII

3601 CCCTGGCGTT ACCCAACTTA ATCGCCTTGC AGCACATCCC
CCTTTCGCCA

3651 GCTGGCGTAA TAGCGAAGAG GCCCGCACCG ATCGCCCTTC
55 CCAACAGTTG

3701 CGCAGCCTGA ATGGCGAATG GCAGCTTGGC TGTTTTGGCG
GATGAGATAA

3751 GATTTTCAGC CTGATACAGA TTAAATCAGA ACGCAGAAGC
5 GGTCTGATAA

3801 AACAGAATTT GCCTGGCGGC AGTAGCGCGG TGGTCCCACC
TGACCCCATG

3851 CCGAACTCAG AAGTGAAACG CCGTAGCGCC GATGGTAGTG
10 TGGGGTCTCC

3901 CCATGCGAGA GTAGGGAAC T GCCAGGCATC AAATAAAACG
AAAGGCTCAG
15

3951 TCGAAAGACT GGGCCTTTCG TTTTATCTGT TGTTTGTCGG
TGAACGCTCT

4001 CCTGAGTAGG ACAAATCCGC CGGGAGCGGA TTTGAACGTT
20 GCGAAGCAAC

4051 GGCCCGGAGG GTGGCGGGCA GGACGCCCGC CATAAACTGC
CAGGCATCAA

4101 ATTAAGCAGA AGGCCATCCT GACGGATGGC CTTTTTGCGT
25 TTCTACAAAC

4151 TCTTTTTGTT TATTTTTCTA AATACATTCA AATATGTATC
CGCTCATGAG
30

4201 ACAATAACCC TGATAAATGC TTCAATAATA TTGAAAAGG
AAGAGTATGA

4251 GTATTCAACA TTTCCGTGTC GCCCTTATTC CCTTTTTTGC
35 GGCATTTTGC

4301 CTCCTGTTT TTGCTCACCC AGAAACGCTG GTGAAAGTAA
AAGATGCTGA

4351 AGATCAGTTG GGTGCACGAG TGGGTACAT CGAACTGGAT
40 CTCAACAGCG

4401 GTAAGATCCT TGAGAGTTTT CGCCCCGAAG AACGTTCTCC
AATGATGAGC
45

4451 ACTTTTAAAG TTCTGCTATG TGGCGCGGTA TTATCCCGTG
TTGACGCCGG

4501 GCAAGAGCAA CTCGGTCGCC GCATACACTA TTCTCAGAAT
50 GACTTG GTT

4551 AGTACTCACC AGTCACAGAA AAGCATCTTA CGGATGGCAT
GACAGTAAGA

4601 GAATTATGCA GTGCTGCCAT AACCATGAGT GATAAACTG
55 CGGCCAACTT

4651 ACTTCTGACA ACGATCGGAG GACCGAAGGA GCTAACCGCT
TTTTTGCACA

5 4701 ACATGGGGGA TCATGTA ACT CGCCTTGATC GTTGGGAACC
GGAGCTGAAT

4751 GAAGCCATAC CAAACGACGA GCGTGACACC ACGATGCCTG
TAGCAATGGC

10 4801 AACAACTTG CGCAA ACTAT TAACTGGCGA ACTACTTACT
CTAGCTTCCC

4851 GGCAACAATT AATAGACTGG ATGGAGGCGG ATAAAGTTGC
AGGACCACTT

15 4901 CTGCGCTCGG CCCTTCCGGC TGGCTGGTTT ATTGCTGATA
AATCTGGAGC

4951 CGGTGAGCGT GGGTCTCGCG GTATCATTCG AGCACTGGGG
20 CCAGATGGTA

5001 AGCCCTCCCG TATCGTAGTT ATCTACACGA CGGGGAGTCA
GGCAACTATG

25 5051 GATGAACGAA ATAGACAGAT CGCTGAGATA GGTGCCTCAC
TGATTAAGCA

5101 TTGGTAACTG TCAGACCAAG TTTACTCATA TATACTTTAG
ATTGATTTAC

30 5151 CCCGGTTGAT AATCAGAAAA GCCCCAAAAA CAGGAAGATT
GTATAAGCAA

5201 ATATTTAAAT TGTAACGTT AATATTTTGT TAAAATTCGC
35 GTTAAATTTT

5251 TGTTAAATCA GCTCATTTTT TAACCAATAG GCCGAAATCG
GCAAAATCCC

40 5301 TTATAAATCA AAAGAATAGC CCGAGATAGG GTTGAGTGTT
GTTCCAGTTT

5351 GGAACAAGAG TCCACTATTA AAGAACGTGG ACTCCAACGT
CAAAGGGCGA

45 5401 AAAACCGTCT ATCAGGGCGA TGGCCCACTA CGTGAACCAT
CACCCAAATC

5451 AAGTTTTTTG GGGTCGAGGT GCCGTAAAGC ACTAAATCGG
50 AACCTAAAG

5501 GGAGCCCCCG ATTTAGAGCT TGACGGGGAA AGCCGGCGAA
CGTGCGGAGA

55 5551 AAGGAAGGGA AGAAAGCGAA AGGAGCGGGC GCTAGGGCGC
TGGCAAGTGT

5601 AGCGGTCACG CTGCGCGTAA CCACCACACC CGCCGCGCTT
AATGCGCCGC

5 5651 TACAGGGCGC GTAAAAGGAT CTAGGTGAAG ATCCTTTTGT
ATAATCTCAT

5701 GACCAAATC CCTTAACGTG AGTTTTCGTT CCACTGAGCG
TCAGACCCCG

10 5751 TAGAAAAGAT CAAAGGATCT TCTTGAGATC CTTTTTTTCT
GCGCGTAATC

5801 TGCTGCTTGC AAACAAAAAA ACCACCGCTA CCAGCGGTGG
TTTGTTTGCC

15 5851 GGATCAAGAG CTACCAACTC TTTTCCGAA GGTAAGTGGC
TTCAGCAGAG

5901 CGCAGATACC AAATACTGTC CTTCTAGTGT AGCCGTAGTT
20 AGGCCACCAC

5951 TTCAAGAACT CTGTAGCACC GCCTACATAC CTCGCTCTGC
TAATCCTGTT

25 6001 ACCAGTGGCT GCTGCCAGTG GCGATAAGTC GTGTCTTACC
GGGTGGAAT

6051 CAAGACGATA GTTACCGGAT AAGGCGCAGC GGTCGGGCTG
AACGGGGGGT

30 6101 TCGTGCACAC AGCCCAGCTT GGAGCGAACG ACCTACACCG
AACTGAGATA

6151 CCTACAGCGT GAGCTATGAG AAAGCGCCAC GCTTCCCGAA
35 GGGAGAAAGG

6201 CGGACAGGTA TCCGGTAAGC GGCAGGGTCG GAACAGGAGA
GCGCACGAGG

40 6251 GAGCTTCCAG GGGGAAACGC CTGGTATCTT TATAGTCCTG
TCGGGTTTCG

6301 CCACCTCTGA CTGAGCGTC GATTTTGTG ATGCTCGTCA
GGGGGGCGGA

45 6351 GCCTATGGAA AAACGCCAGC AACGCGGCCT TTTTACGGTT
CCTGGCCTTT

6401 TGCTGGCCTT TTGCTCACAT GTTCTTTCCT GCGTTATCCC
50 CTGATTCTGT

6451 GGATAACCGT ATTACCGCCT TTGAGTGAGC TGATAACCGT
CGCCGCAGCC

55 6501 GAACGACCGA GCGCAGCGAG TCAGTGAGCG AGGAAGCGGA
AGAGCGCCTG

6551 ATGCGGTATT TTCTCCTTAC GCATCTGTGC GGTATTTTCAC
ACCGCATATG

5 6601 GTGCACTCTC AGTACAATCT GCTCTGATGC CGCATAGTTA
AGCCAGTATA

6651 CACTCCGCTA TCGCTACGTG ACTGGGTCAT GGCTGCGCCC
CGACACCCGC

10 6701 CAACACCCGC TGACGCGCCC TGACGGGCTT GTCTGCTCCC
GGCATCCGCT

6751 TACAGACAAG CTGTGACCGT CTCCGGGAGC TGCATGTGTC
AGAGGTTTTTC

15 6801 ACCGTCATCA CCGAAACGCG CGAGGCAGCT GCGGTAAAGC
TCATCAGCGT

6851 GGTCGTGCAG CGATTCACAG ATGTCTGCCT GTTCATCCGC
20 GTCCAGCTCG

6901 TTGAGTTTCT CCAGAAGCGT TAATGTCTGG CTTCTGATAA
AGCGGGCCAT

25 6951 GTTAAGGGCG GTTTTTTTCCT GTTTGGTCAC TTGATGCCTC
CGTGTAAGGG

7001 GGAATTTCTG TTCATGGGGG TAATGATACC GATGAAACGA
GAGAGGATGC

30 7051 TCACGATACG GGT TACTGAT GATGAACATG CCCGGTTACT
GGAACGTTGT

7101 GAGGGTAAAC AACTGGCGGT ATGGATGCGG CGGGACCAGA
35 GAAAAATCAC

7151 TCAGGGTCAA TGCCAGCGCT TCGTTAATAC AGATGTAGGT
GTTCCACAGG

40 7201 GTAGCCAGCA GCATCCTGCG ATGCAGATCC GGAACATAAT
GGTGCAGGGC

7251 GCTGACTTCC GCGTTTCCAG ACTTTACGAA ACACGGAAAC
CGAAGACCAT

45 7301 TCATGTTGTT GCTCAGGTCG CAGACGTTTT GCAGCAGCAG
TCGCTTCACG

7351 TTCGCTCGCG TATCGGTGAT TCATTCTGCT AACCAGTAAG
50 GCAACCCCGC

7401 CAGCCTAGCC GGGTCCTCAA CGACAGGAGC ACGATCATGC
GCACCCGTGG

55 7451 CCAGGACCCA ACGCTGCCCC AAATT

Figure 2 - Amino acid sequence of MBP-NS3''-gly₁₂-4A enzyme

5

1 MKTEEGKLVI WINGDKGYNG LAEVGKKFEK DTGIKVTVEH
PDKLEEKFPQ

10 MBP (
51 VAATGDGPDI IFWAHDRFGG YAQSGLLAEI TPDKAFQDKL
YPFTWDAVRY

15 101 NGKLIAYPIA VEALSIIYNK DLLPNPPKTW EEIPALDKEL
KAKGKSALMF

151 NLQEPYFTWP LIAADGGYAF KYENGKYDIK DVGVDNAGAK
AGLTFLVDLI

20 201 KNKHMNADTD YSIAEAAFNK GETAMTINGP WAWSNIDTSK
VNYGVTVLPT

251 FKGQPSKPFV GVLSAGINAA SPNKELAKEF LENYLLTDEG
LEAVNKDKPL

25 301 GAVALKSYEE ELAKDPRIAA TMENAQKGEI MPNIPQMSAF
WYAVRTAVIN

30 351 AASGRQTVDE ALKDAQTNSS SNNNNNNNNN NLGIEGRISE
FMGREIHLGP

NS2/3 (
401 ADSLEGQGWR LLAHITAYSQ QTRGLLGCI I TSLTGRDRNQ
VEGEVQMVST

35 451 ATQSFLATCV NGVCWTVYHG AGSKTLAGPK GPITQMYTNV
DQDLVGWQAP

501 PGARSLTPCT CGSSDLYLVT RHADVIPVRR RGDSRGSLLS
PRPVSYLKGS

40 551 SGGPLLCPSP HAVGIFRAAV CTRGVAKAVD FVPVESMETT
MRSPVFTDNS

601 SPPAVCMGGG GGGGGGGGGS MSTWVLVGGV LAALAAAYCLT

45 TGSVVIVGRI

Linker (NS4A (
651 VLSGKPAIIP DREVLYREFD EMEEC

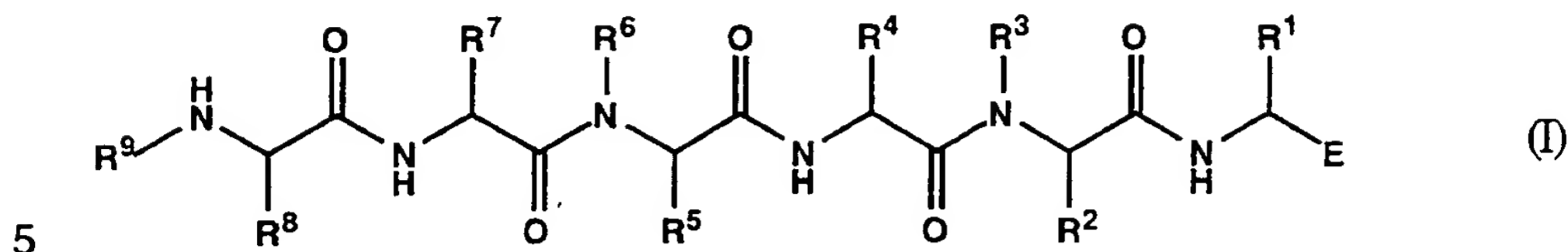
50 Amino acids 1-391 - Maltose binding protein and other
sequences derived from New England Biolabs vector pMALTM-c2

Amino acids 393-605 and 622-675 - HCV-derived sequences
(amino acids 1007-1219 and 1658-1711 of HCV polyprotein
respectively)

55 Amino acids 606-621 - linker region

Claims

1. Compounds of the general formula



wherein

- E represents CHO or B(OH)₂;
- 10 R¹ represents lower alkyl, halo-lower alkyl, cyano-lower alkyl, lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl;
- R² represents lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aminocarbonyl-lower alkyl or lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl; and
- 15 R³ represents hydrogen or lower alkyl; or
- R² and R³ together represent di- or trimethylene optionally substituted by hydroxy;
- 20 R⁴ represents lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, cyano-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, aryl or lower cycloalkyl;
- 25 R⁵ represents lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, cyano-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl or lower cycloalkyl;
- 30 R⁶ represents hydrogen or lower alkyl;
- R⁷ represent lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl or lower cycloalkyl;
- 35 R⁸ represents lower alkyl, hydroxy-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl or aryl-lower alkyl; and
- R⁹ represents lower alkylcarbonyl, carboxy-lower alkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, lower alkylsulphonyl, arylsulphonyl, lower alkoxy-carbonyl or aryl-lower

alkoxycarbonyl,
and salts of acidic compounds of formula I with bases.

2. Compounds of the general formula I according to
5 claim 1.

3. Compounds according to claim 1, wherein R¹
represents lower alkyl, halo-lower alkyl, lower alkylthio-lower
alkyl, aryl-lower alkylthio-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl,
10 lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl.

4. Compounds according to claim 3, wherein the halo-
lower alkyl group is fluoro-lower alkyl.

15 5. Compounds according to claim 3, wherein the hetero-
aryl-lower alkyl group is thienyl-lower alkyl or furyl-lower
alkyl.

6. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 5,
20 wherein R² represents lower alkyl, lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl
or aryl-lower alkyl.

7. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 6,
wherein R³ represents hydrogen.

25

8. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 5,
wherein R² and R³ together represent trimethylene optionally
substituted by hydroxy.

30 9. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 8,
wherein R⁴ represents lower alkyl, lower cycloalkyl-lower alkyl,
aryl-lower alkyl, aryl or lower cycloalkyl.

10. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 9,
35 wherein R⁵ represents aryl-lower alkyl or lower cycloalkyl.

11. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 10,
wherein R⁶ represents hydrogen.

12. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 11, wherein R⁷ represents lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl or hydroxy-lower alkyl.

5

13. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 12, wherein R⁸ represents hydroxy-lower alkyl, carboxy-lower alkyl or aryl-lower alkyl.

10

14. Compounds according to any one of claims 1 to 13, wherein R⁹ represents lower alkylcarbonyl or carboxy-lower alkylcarbonyl.

15. A compound according to claim 1 selected from:

15

2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-Carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]butyraldehyde;

20 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4-difluorovaleraldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

25 2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(methylthio)propionaldehyde;

2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(butylthio)propionaldehyde;

30 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-pentenaldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-pentynal;

35 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-

leucyl]amino]-4-hexynal;

3-(benzylthio)-2(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propionaldehyde;

5 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-(2-thienyl)propionaldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-

10 leucyl]amino]-3-(3-thienyl)propionaldehyde; and

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-3-(2-naphthyl)-D-alanyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde.

15 16. A compound according to claim 1, selected from:

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-Carboxypropionyl)-L-seryl-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

20 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]hexanal;

(Z)-2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4-hexenal;

25 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

30 2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

35 2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-5-methylhexanal;

2(S)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L-

α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-5-hexenal;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-norleucyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde; and

2(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(4-acetamidobenzoyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-4,4,4-trifluorobutyraldehyde;

17. A compound according to claim 1, selected from:

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-N-(3-Carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]butylboronic acid; and

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid.

18. A compound according to claim 1, selected from:

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-Carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-4-chloro-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-3-cyclopentyl-L-alanyl]amino]-3-butenylboronic acid;

1(R)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]pentylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid;

1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(3-carboxypropionyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-L- α -glutamyl]-L-2-cyclohexylglycyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl]-L-leucyl]amino]propylboronic acid; and

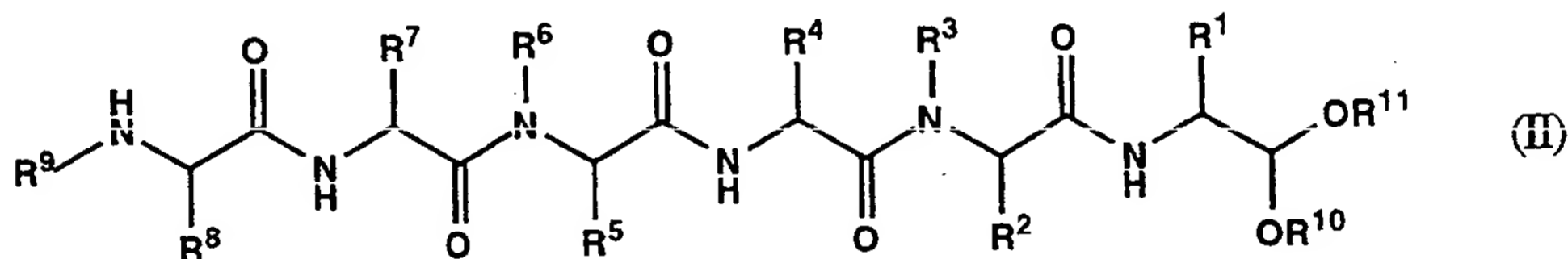
1(RS)-[[N-[N-[N-[N-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L- α -aspartyl]-D-valyl]-2-methyl-L-phenylalanyl]-3-methyl-L-valyl-L-leucyl]-amino]propylboronic acid.

19. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 18 for use as a therapeutically active substance, especially as an antiviral agent and particularly as an agent against Hepatitis C, Hepatitis G or human GB viruses.

20. A process for the manufacture of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 18 and of salts of those compounds which are acidic with bases which process comprises

a) for the manufacture of a compound of formula I in which E represents CHO, deacetalizing and, where required, deprotecting an acetal of the general formula

20

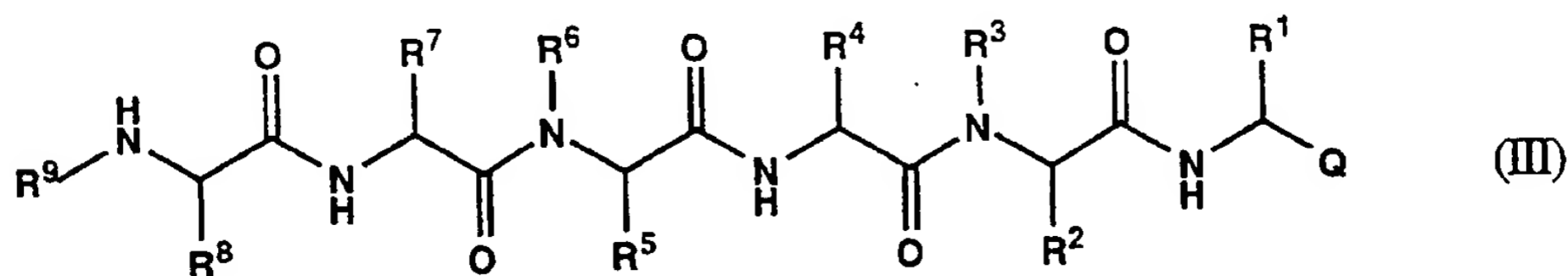


wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹ have the significance given in claim 1, provided that any carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl group(s) present is/are in protected form, and R¹⁰ and R¹¹ each represent lower alkyl,

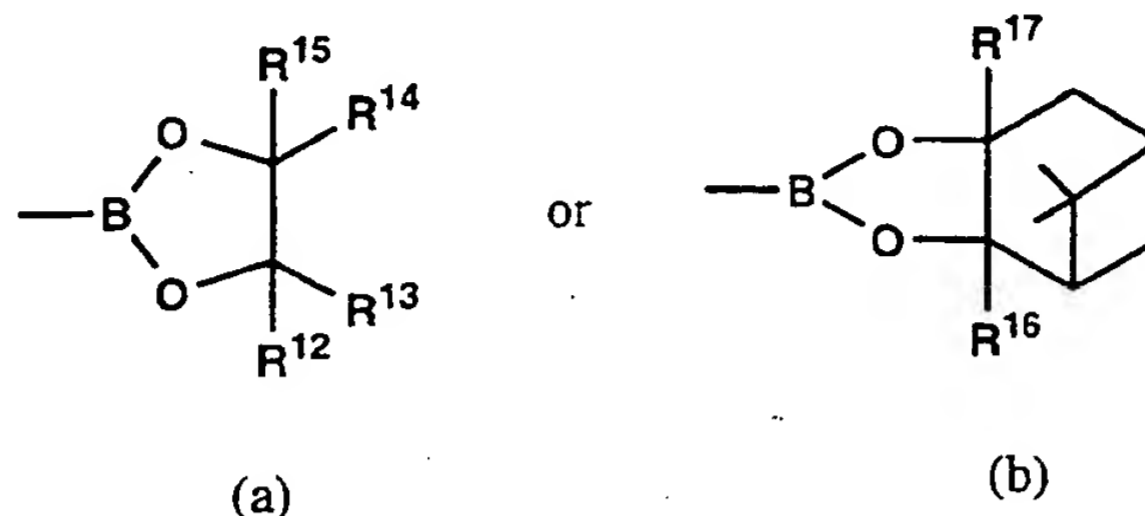
25

b) for the manufacture of a compound of formula I in which E represents B(OH)₂, ring opening and, where required, deprotecting a substituted dioxaborolane of the general formula

30



wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹ have the significance given in claim 1, provided that any carboxy, hydroxy and/or aminocarbonyl group(s) present may be in protected form, and Q represents a group of the formula



wherein R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ each represent hydrogen or lower alkyl and R¹⁶ and R¹⁷ each represent hydrogen or lower alkyl,

and

c) if desired, converting an acidic compound of formula I obtained into a salt with a base.

21. A process according to claim 20, wherein the acetal of formula II or substituted dioxaborolane of formula III in which Q represents a group of formula (a) is bonded to a solid phase peptide synthesis resin.

22. Acetals of formula II given in claim 20.

23. Substituted dioxaborolanes of formula III given in claim 20.

24. A medicament, especially an antiviral medicament, particularly a medicament against Hepatitis C, Hepatitis G or human GB viruses, containing a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 18 in association with a compatible pharmaceutical carrier.

25. The use of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 18 for the production of an antiviral medicament, especially a medicament against Hepatitis C, Hepatitis G or human GB viruses.

5

26. The invention as hereinbefore described.

* * *